

组合数学习题解答

孙世新 卢光辉 戴 波 编 著

张先迪 审

电子科技大学出版社

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

组合数学 / 孙世新, 卢光辉, 戴波 编著. — 北京: 清华大学出版社, 2006.5
ISBN 7-81114-092-6
I. ①组… II. ①孙…②卢…③戴… III. ①组合数学—解题—高等学校—教材 IV. ①O157-44
CIP 2006 031972

内 容 提 要

2003

组合数学习题解答

孙世新 卢光辉 戴 波 编 著
张先迪 审

出 版	610054
责任编辑	
发 行	
印 刷	
开 本	787× 1092 1/16 印张 13.875 字数 338
版 次	2006 5
印 次	2006 5
书 号	ISBN 7 81114 092 6/O· 5
印 数	1 4000
定 价	18.00

前 言

1

2

"

"

编 者

2005 年 10 月于电子科技大学

目 录

第一章 排列、组合与二项式定理	1
一、内容提要	1
二、习题解答	5
第二章 鸽笼原理与 Ramsey 定理	22
一、内容提要	22
二、习题解答	23
第三章 容斥原理	33
一、内容提要	33
二、习题解答	34
第四章 母函数	53
一、内容提要	53
二、习题解答	56
第五章 递归关系	72
一、内容提要	72
二、习题解答	76
第六章 Pólya 定理	98
一、内容提要	98
二、习题解答	100
第七章 网络流	113
一、内容提要	113

二、习题解答.....	120
第八章 线性规划	146
一、内容提要.....	146
二、习题解答.....	154
第九章 动态规划	179
一、内容提要.....	179
二、习题解答.....	183
第十章 区组设计	196
一、内容提要.....	196
二、习题解答.....	203
参考文献.....	216

第一章 排列、组合与二项式定理

一、内容提要

加法规则 $S_i \cap S_j = \emptyset$ $S_i \subseteq S$ $i=1, 2, 3, \dots, m$ $S = \bigcup_{i=1}^m S_i$ $i \neq j$

$$|S| = \left| \bigcup_{i=1}^m S_i \right| = \sum_{i=1}^m |S_i| \quad 1.1$$

$m=2$

$$|S| = |S_1 \cup S_2| = |S_1| + |S_2|$$

乘法规则 $S_i (i=1, 2, \dots, m)$

$$S = S_1 \times S_2 \times \dots \times S_m = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m) | a_i \in S_i, i=1, 2, \dots, m\}$$

$$|S| = |S_1 \times S_2 \times \dots \times S_m| = \prod_{i=1}^m |S_i| \quad 1.2$$

$m=2$

$$|S| = |S_1 \times S_2| = |S_1| \times |S_2|$$

定义 1.1 $A = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$ n r n

$$P(n, r) = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!} \quad A = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\} \quad r \leq n \quad A = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_r\} \quad P$$

$$P(n, r) = \begin{cases} 1 & n \geq r = 0 \\ 0 & n < r \end{cases}$$

定理 1.1 $n, r, r \leq n$

$$P(n, r) = n(n-1)\dots(n-r+1) = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!} \quad 1.3$$

推论 1 $n \geq r \geq 2$

$$P(n, r) = nP(n-1, r-1) \quad 1.4$$

推论 2 $n \geq r \geq 2$

$$P(n, r) = r \cdot P(n-1, r-1) + P(n-1, r) \quad 1.5$$

定义 1.2 $A = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$ n r

定理 1.2 $A = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$ r

$$P(n, r) / r = n! / (r(n-r)!) \quad 1.6$$

定义 1.3 $B = \{k_1 \cdot b_1, k_2 \cdot b_2, \dots, k_n \cdot b_n\}$ r

定理 1.3 $B = \{\infty \cdot b_1, \infty \cdot b_2, \dots, \infty \cdot b_n\}$ r n^r

定理 1.4 $B = \{n_1 \cdot b_1, n_2 \cdot b_2, \dots, n_k \cdot b_k\}$

$$\frac{n!}{n_1! n_2! \dots n_k!}$$

$$n = \sum_{i=1}^k n_i$$

定义 1.4 $A = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$ n r n

r $r \leq n$ A r A

r A r 用 $C(n, r)$ 或 $\binom{n}{r}$ A r

$$C(n, r) = \binom{n}{r} = \begin{cases} 1 & n \geq r = 0 \\ 0 & n < r \end{cases}$$

定理 1.5 $r \leq n$

$$C(n, r) = \binom{n}{r} = \frac{P(n, r)}{r!} = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!} \quad 1.7$$

推论 1 $C(n, r) = C(n, n-r)$ 1.8

推论 2 Pascal

$$C(n, r) = C(n-1, r) + C(n-1, r-1) \quad 1.9$$

推论 3 $C(n-1, r-1) + C(n-2, r-1) + \dots + C(r-1, r-1) = C(n, r)$ 1.10

定理 1.6 $B = \{\infty \cdot b_1, \infty \cdot b_2, \dots, \infty \cdot b_n\}$ r

$$F(n, r) = \binom{n+r-1}{r} \quad 1.11$$

定理 1.7 n x y

$$(x+y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k} \quad 1.12$$

推论 1 n x y

$$(x+y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{n-k} x^k y^{n-k}$$

$$(x+y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{n-k} x^{n-k} y^k$$

推论 2 n

$$(1+x)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{n-k} x^k \quad 1.13$$

推论 3 n

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} = 2^n \quad 1.14$$

推论 4 n

$$\sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} = 0 \quad 1.15$$

定理 1.8 α

$$(x+y)^\alpha = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{\alpha}{k} x^k y^{\alpha-k} \quad 1.16$$

$$\binom{a}{k} = \begin{cases} \frac{a(a-1)\cdots(a-k+1)}{k!} & k > 0 \\ 1 & k = 0 \\ 0 & k < 0 \end{cases}$$

推论 1 $|z| < 1$ z

$$(1+z)^\alpha = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{\alpha}{k} z^k \quad 1.17$$

推论 2 $|z| < 1$ z

$$(1+z)^{-n} = \frac{1}{(1+z)^n} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \binom{n+k-1}{k} z^k \quad 1.18$$

推论 3 $|z| < 1$

$$\frac{1}{1+z} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k z^k \quad 1.19$$

推论 4 $|z| < 1$

$$\frac{1}{1-z} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} z^k \quad 1.20$$

推论 5 $|z| < 1$

$$\sqrt{1+z} = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k-1}}{k \cdot 2^{2k-1}} \binom{2k-2}{k-1} z^k \quad 1.21$$

推论 6 $|-rz| < 1$ $|z| < 1/|r|$

$$(1-rz)^{-n} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{n+k-1}{k} r^k z^k \quad 1.22$$

恒等式 1

$$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n}{k} \binom{n-1}{k-1} \quad 1.23$$

恒等式 2

$$\sum_{k=1}^n k \binom{n}{k} = n \cdot 2^{n-1} \quad 1.24$$

恒等式 3

$$\sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k k \binom{n}{k} = 0 \quad 1.25$$

恒等式 4

$$\sum_{k=0}^n k^2 \binom{n}{k} = n(n+1)2^{n-2} \quad 1.26$$

恒等式 5

$$\sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^{k-1} \binom{n}{k} k^2 = 0 \quad 1.27$$

恒等式 6

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \frac{1}{k+1} \binom{n}{k} = \frac{2^{n+1}-1}{n+1} \quad 1.28$$

恒等式 7

$$\sum_{k=0}^p \binom{n}{k} \binom{m}{p-k} = \binom{m+n}{p} \quad 1.29$$

恒等式 8

$$\sum_{k=0}^m \binom{n}{k} \binom{m}{k} = \binom{m+n}{m} \quad 1.30$$

恒等式 9

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k}^2 = \binom{2n}{n} \quad 1.31$$

恒等式 10

$$\sum_{k=0}^p \binom{p}{k} \binom{q}{k} \binom{n+k}{p+q} = \binom{n}{p} \binom{n}{q}$$

恒等式 11

$$\sum_{k=0}^p \binom{p}{k} \binom{q}{k} \binom{n}{p+q-k} = \binom{n+p}{p} \binom{n+q}{q} \quad 1.32$$

恒等式 12

$$\sum_{i=0}^n \binom{n}{i} \binom{k}{k-i} = \binom{n+k}{k} \quad 1.33$$

恒等式 13

$$\sum_{j=0}^k \binom{\alpha}{j} \binom{k}{k-j} = \binom{\alpha+k}{k} \quad 1.34$$

1

2 Pascal

3

4

5

Taylor

H.W.Gonld

二、习题解答

1.1 1000 9999

解: 1000 9999 4

1 3 5 7 9

1000

1 2 3 L 9

1 3 5 7 9 5

1 2 L 9 8

0 1 2 L 9

8

0 1 2 L 9

7

$$5 \times 8 \times 8 \times 7 = 2240$$

1.2 1000 9999

解: 4 1 3 5 7 9 5 5

0 0

5 4

$$P_{5-4}^5 = \frac{5!}{(5-4)!} = 120$$

1.3 52

解 52 52

52

52

1.4 10

解: 10

10

9

9

2

2×9

10! - 2×9

1.5 10

10

$\frac{10!}{10}$

9

$\frac{9!}{9}$

$2 \times \frac{9!}{9}$

$$\frac{10!}{10} - 2 \times \frac{9!}{9} = 9! - 2 \times 8!$$

1.6 6 6

解: 6

$\frac{6!}{6}$

6

2

5

3

4

.....

6

1

$$\frac{6!}{6} \times 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 6! \times 5!$$

1.7 1 2 3 4 5

5

20 000

解:

方法一:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & & & 20\ 000 & & 20\ 000 \\
 & & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 4 \\
 & & & & 4 & & 3 & & 2 \\
 & 1 & & & & & 4 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 96 & & \\
 & & & " & 5 & " & 5 & & 1 \\
 & 3 & & & 3 & & 2 & & \\
 1 & & & & 3 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 18 & & & & \\
 & & 5 & & & & & & \\
 & & & & 96 - 18 = 78 & & & &
 \end{array}$$

方法二:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & 5 & & 20\ 000 & & 1\ 2\ 3\ 4 \\
 & & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & \\
 & & 1 & & 1 & & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\
 & 4 & & & 3 & & 2 & & 1 \\
 & & & & 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 \times 1 = 24 & & & & \\
 & 2 & 3 & 4 & & & 3 & & 2 \\
 3 & 4 & & & 5 & 3 & & 3 & \\
 & 2 & & & 1 & & & & \\
 & & & & 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 54 & & & & \\
 & & 5 & & & & & & \\
 & & & & 24 + 54 = 78 & & & &
 \end{array}$$

1.8

$$a \quad \binom{n}{r} = \frac{n}{n-r} \binom{n-1}{r}$$

$$\text{证明:} \quad = \binom{n}{r} = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!} = \frac{n}{n-r} \cdot \frac{(n-1)!}{r!(n-r-1)!} = \frac{n}{n-r} \cdot \binom{n-1}{r} =$$

$$b \quad \frac{n}{n+1} \binom{2n}{n} = \binom{2n}{n-1}$$

$$\text{证明:} \quad = \frac{n}{n-1} \binom{2n}{n} = \frac{n}{n+1} \cdot \frac{2n!}{n!n!} = \frac{(2n)!}{(n-1)!(n+1)!} = \binom{2n}{n-1} =$$

$$c \quad n \binom{n-1}{r} = (r+1) \binom{n}{r+1}$$

证明:

$$\begin{aligned} &= n \binom{n-1}{r} = n \cdot \frac{(n-1)!}{r!(n-r-1)!} = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r-1)!} = (r+1) \cdot \frac{n!}{(r+1)!(n-r-1)!} \\ &= (r+1) \cdot \binom{n}{r+1} = \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 1.9 & 1 & 10 & 000 & 000 & 000 & 100 & 1 \\ & 1 & & & & & & \end{array}$$

解:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & 1 & 0 & 9 & 999 & 999 & 999 & 100 \\ 1 & & \{\infty \cdot 0 & \infty \cdot 2 & \infty \cdot 3 & \text{L} & \infty \cdot 9\} & 10 - & 9^{10} \\ & 1 & 1 & 10 & 000 & 000 & 000 & 9^{10} - 1 & 1 \\ & 10^{10} - 1 & - & 9^{10} - 1 & = & 10^{10} - 9^{10} & 1 & & \end{array}$$

注意: 0

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 1.10 & 1000 & 9999 & & & & 3 \\ & 3 & & 3 & 7 & & \end{array}$$

解: 3

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} a & 3 & 3 & & & & 3 \\ B = \{\infty \cdot 0 & \infty \cdot 1 & \infty \cdot 2 & \infty \cdot 4 & \infty \cdot 5 & \text{L} & \infty \cdot 9\} & 3 & (10-1)^3 \\ b & 3 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 \\ \binom{8}{1} & & & & & & 3 & & & & 3 \times (10-1)^2 \end{array}$$

$$\binom{8}{1} \times 3 \times (10-1)^2$$

a b

$$9^3 + 8 \times 9^2 \times \binom{3}{1} = 2673$$

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccc} & 3 & & 1 & 2 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 \end{array}$$

8

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccc} 0 & 1 & 2 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 \end{array}$$

$$8 \times 9^3 = 5832$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} 7 & 0 & 7 \end{array}$$

$$8 + \binom{3}{2} \times (10-1) = 35$$

1.11 " MISSISSIPPI"

S

$$B = \{1 \cdot M \quad 4 \cdot S \quad 4 \cdot I \quad 2 \cdot P\}$$

$\frac{S}{7!}$	4	S	B	7
$\frac{2!4!}{2!4!}$			8	_M_I_I_I_P_P_I_

$$\frac{7!}{2!4!}\binom{8}{4}=7350$$

解: 30 30

方法一：

$$\binom{n+r-1}{r}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} 2 & 1 & 2 \end{array}$$

$$k=n+r$$

$$y_1+y_2+\dots+y_n=k \qquad \binom{k-1}{n-1}$$

$$1 \quad \binom{r-1}{n-1}$$

方法二:

$$\binom{r}{r-1} \binom{r-1}{n-1}$$

$$1.14 \quad 1 \quad 10\,000 \quad 5 \quad 5$$

$$\text{解:} \quad 1 \quad 9999 \quad 4 \quad 0 \quad 235 \quad 0235$$

$$x_1+x_2+x_3+x_4=5$$

$$F \quad 4 \quad 5 = \binom{4+5-1}{5} = 56$$

$$x_1+x_2+x_3+x_4=4 \quad F \quad 4 \quad 4 = 35$$

$$x_1+x_2+x_3+x_4=3 \quad F \quad 4 \quad 3 = 20$$

$$x_1+x_2+x_3+x_4=2 \quad F \quad 4 \quad 2 = 10$$

$$x_1+x_2+x_3+x_4=1 \quad F \quad 4 \quad 1 = 4$$

$$F \quad 4 \quad 4 + F \quad 4 \quad 3 + F \quad 4 \quad 2 + F \quad 4 \quad 1 = 69$$

$$10\,000 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad 70 \quad 5$$

$$1.15 \quad a \quad a \quad a \quad a \quad a \quad b \quad c \quad d \quad e \quad a$$

$$\text{解:} \quad a \quad 4 \quad b \quad c \quad d \quad e \quad 5 \quad a \quad 5 \quad a$$

$$a \quad a \quad a \quad a \quad a \quad a \quad a \quad a \quad a \quad a \quad 4$$

$$b \quad c \quad d \quad e \quad 4 \quad 4 \quad 4$$

$$1.16 \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad L \quad 1000 \quad 4$$

$$\text{解:} \quad A = \{1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad L \quad 1000\} \quad 1000 \quad 4$$

$$A_i = \{x | x \equiv i \pmod{4} \} \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4$$

$$4 \quad 250$$

$$A \quad a_1 \quad a_2 \quad a_3 \quad a_1+a_2+a_3=0$$

mod4

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 & & A_4 & & \\ & & & & N_1 = C_{250}^3 & & \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 & & A_1 & A_2 & \\ & & & & A_1 & 2 & A_2 & 1 \end{array}$$

$$N_2 = C_{250}^2 \times C_{250}^1$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 & & A_3 & A_4 & A_1 \end{array}$$

$$N_3 = [C_{250}^1]^3$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 & & A_2 & A_4 & A_2 & 2 & A_4 \end{array}$$

$$N_4 = C_{250}^2 \times C_{250}^1$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 & & A_2 & A_3 & A_2 & 1 & A_3 & 2 \end{array}$$

$$N_5 = C_{250}^1 \times C_{250}^2$$

$$N = N_1 + N_2 + N_3 + N_4 + N_5 = C_{250}^3 + 3 \times C_{250}^2 \times C_{250}^1 + [C_{250}^1]^3$$

$$1.17 \quad 2x-7^7$$

$$\text{解: } X=2x \quad Y=-7 \quad n=7 \quad 1.12$$

$$1.18 \quad 3X-2Y^{18} \quad X^5Y^{13} \quad X^8Y^9$$

$$\text{解: } 1.12 \quad X=3x \quad Y=-2y \quad n=18 \quad k=5 \quad X^5Y^{13}$$

$$-\binom{18}{5} 3^5 \times 2^{13}$$

$$X^8Y^9 \quad 0 \quad Q_{8+9 \neq 18} \therefore (3X-2Y)^{18} \quad X^8Y^9 \quad X^8Y^9$$

0

1.19

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} = 2^n$$

解:

方法一:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} a & b & & n & & a & b \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} 6 \ 4 \ 7^n \ 4 \ 8 \\ 2 \times 2 \times L \times 2 = 2^n \end{array}$$

$$a \quad b$$

$$k=0 \ 1 \ 2 \ L \ n \quad a \quad n-k \quad b$$

$$\begin{array}{c} n- \\ B_k = \{k \cdot a \ (n-k) \cdot b\} \end{array}$$

$$n- \quad 1.4$$

$$\frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} = \binom{n}{k} \quad k=0 \ 1 \ 2 \ L \ n$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k}$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} = 2^n$$

方法二:

$$U = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$$

$$2 \times 2 \times 2 \times \dots \times 2 = 2^n$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k}$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k}$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} = 2^n$$

1.20

$$\frac{(2n)!}{2^n} \cdot \frac{(3n)!}{2^n \times 3^n}$$

$$\frac{(2n)!}{2^n}$$

$$2n$$

$$1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot \dots \cdot 2n$$

$$2 \binom{2n}{2}$$

$$3 \cdot 4 \cdot 5 \cdot \dots \cdot 2n-2$$

2

$$3 \cdot 4$$

$$2 \binom{2(n-1)}{2}$$

L L

$$2n-1 \cdot 2n \cdot 2n-2 \cdot 2n-3 \cdot \dots \cdot 2$$

$$2n-2 \cdot 2n-3 \cdot \dots \cdot 2$$

$$2 \binom{2n-(2n-2)}{2} = 2 \binom{2}{2}$$

$$2 \binom{2n}{2} \times 2 \binom{2(n-1)}{2} \times \mathbf{L} \times 2 \binom{2}{2}$$

$$= 2^n \times \binom{2n}{2} \times \binom{2(n-1)}{2} \times \mathbf{L} \times \binom{2}{2}$$

$$2^n \times \binom{2n}{2} \times \binom{2(n-1)}{2} \times \mathbf{L} \times \binom{2}{2} = (2n)!$$

$$\therefore \frac{(2n)!}{2^n} = \binom{2n}{2} \times \binom{2(n-1)}{2} \times \mathbf{L} \times \binom{2}{2}$$

$$\frac{(2n)!}{2^n}$$

$3n$

$(3n)!$

$3n$

1 2 3

$3n$

3

1 2 3

$$3 \binom{3n}{3}$$

4 5 6

1 2 3

$3n-3$

3

4 5 6

$$3 \binom{3(n-1)}{3}$$

$\mathbf{L} \mathbf{L}$

$3n-2$ $3n-1$ $3n$

1 2 3 \mathbf{L}

$3n-3$

$3n-3$

$3n-$ $3n-3$

3

$3n-2$ $3n-1$ $3n$

$$3! \binom{3n-(3n-2)}{3} = 3! \binom{3}{3}$$

$$3 \binom{3n}{3} \times 3! \binom{3(n-1)}{3} \times \mathbf{L} \times 3 \binom{3}{3}$$

$$= (3!)^n \times \binom{3n}{3} \times \binom{3(n-1)}{3} \times \mathbf{L} \times \binom{3}{3}$$

$$= 2^n \times 3^n \times \binom{3n}{3} \times \binom{3(n-1)}{3} \times \mathbf{L} \times \binom{3}{3}$$

$$2^n \times 3^n \times \binom{3n}{3} \times \binom{3(n-1)}{3} \times \cdots \times \binom{3}{3} = (3n)!$$

$$\therefore \frac{(3n)!}{2^n \times 3^n} = \binom{3n}{3} \times \binom{3(n-1)}{3} \times \cdots \times \binom{3}{3}$$

$$\frac{(3n)!}{2^n \times 3^n}$$

1.21

$$\binom{n}{l} \binom{l}{r} = \binom{n}{r} \binom{n-r}{l-r}$$

证明: $n \quad l \quad r$

选法一: $n \quad l \quad l \quad r$

$$\binom{n}{l} \binom{l}{r}$$

选法二: $n \quad r \quad n-r \quad l-r$

$$\binom{n}{r} \binom{n-r}{l-r}$$

$$\binom{n}{l} \binom{l}{r} = \binom{n}{r} \binom{n-r}{l-r}$$

1.22

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \frac{2^{k+1}}{k+1} \binom{n}{k} = \frac{3^{n+1} - 1}{n+1}$$

证明:

方法一:

1.13

$$(1+x)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k$$

0 2

$$\int_0^2 (1+x)^n dx = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} \int_0^2 x^k dx$$

$$\left. \frac{(1+x)^{n+1}}{n+1} \right|_{x=0}^2 = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} \left. \frac{x^{k+1}}{k+1} \right|_{x=0}^2$$

\therefore

$$\frac{3^{n+1} - 1}{n+1} = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} \frac{2^{k+1}}{k+1}$$

方法二:

1.23

$$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n}{k} \binom{n-1}{k-1}$$

$$\therefore \binom{n}{k} = \frac{k+1}{n+1} \binom{n+1}{k+1}$$

$$\frac{1}{k+1} \binom{n}{k} = \frac{1}{n+1} \binom{n+1}{k+1}$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \frac{2^{k+1}}{k+1} \binom{n}{k} = \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{2^{k+1}}{n+1} \binom{n+1}{k+1} = \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{k=0}^n 2^{k+1} \binom{n+1}{k+1}$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n 2^{k+1} \binom{n+1}{k+1}$$

1.13

$$(1+x)^{n+1} = \sum_{k=0}^{n+1} \binom{n+1}{k} x^k$$

$$= 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} \binom{n+1}{k} x^k = 1 + \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n+1}{k+1} x^{k+1}$$

 $x=2$

$$1 + \sum_{k=0}^n 2^{k+1} \binom{n+1}{k+1} = 3^{n+1}$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n 2^{k+1} \binom{n+1}{k+1} = 3^{n+1} - 1$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \frac{2^{k+1}}{k+1} \binom{n}{k} = \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{k=0}^n 2^{k+1} \binom{n+1}{k+1} = \frac{(3^{n+1} - 1)}{n+1}$$

1.23

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \frac{(-1)^k}{m+k+1} \binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!m!}{(n+m+1)!}$$

证明:

1.13

$$(1-x)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} x^k$$

$$\therefore x^m(1-x)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} x^{m+k}$$

$$0 \quad 1$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} \frac{1}{m+k+1} \\ &= \int_0^1 x^m (1-x)^n dx \\ &= \int_0^1 \frac{(1-x)^n}{m+1} dx^{m+1} \\ &= \frac{(1-x)^n}{m+1} x^{m+1} \Big|_{x=0}^1 - \int_0^1 \frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1} d(1-x)^n \\ &= \frac{n}{m+1} \int_0^1 x^{m+1} (1-x)^{n-1} dx \\ &= L \quad L \\ &= \frac{m!n!}{(m+n+1)!} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{(-1)^k}{m+k+1} \binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!m!}{(n+m+1)!}$$

1.24

$$\text{a} \quad \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{n-k}{m-k} = \binom{n+1}{m}$$

$$\text{b} \quad \sum_{k=m}^n \binom{k}{m} \binom{n}{k} = \binom{n}{m} 2^{n-m}$$

$$\text{c} \quad \sum_{k=0}^m (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} = (-1)^m \binom{n-1}{m}$$

$$\text{证明: a} \quad = \binom{n+1}{m} = \binom{n}{m} + \binom{n}{m-1} \quad 1.9$$

$$= \binom{n}{m} + \binom{n-1}{m-1} + \binom{n-1}{m-2} \quad 1.9$$

$$= \binom{n}{m} + \binom{n-1}{m-1} + \binom{n-2}{m-2} + \binom{n-2}{m-3} \quad 1.9$$

$$= L \quad L \quad 1.9$$

$$= \binom{n}{m} + \binom{n-1}{m-1} + \dots + \binom{n-m+1}{m-m+1} + \binom{n-m+1}{m-m}$$

$$= \binom{n}{m} + \binom{n-1}{m-1} + \dots + \binom{n-(m-1)}{m-(m-1)} + \binom{n-m}{m-m} + \binom{n-m}{m-m-1}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{n-k}{m-k} + \binom{n-m}{-1} \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{n-k}{m-k} \qquad \qquad \qquad \ominus \quad \binom{n-m}{-1} = 0
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{b} \quad Q \binom{k}{m} \binom{n}{k} &= \frac{k!}{m!(k-m)!} \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} \\
 &= \frac{n!}{m!(n-m)!} \frac{(n-m)!}{(k-m)!(n-m-(k-m))!} \\
 &= \binom{n}{m} \binom{n-m}{k-m} \\
 \therefore \sum_{k=m}^n \binom{k}{m} \binom{n}{k} &= \sum_{k=m}^n \binom{n}{m} \binom{n-m}{k-m} = \binom{n}{m} \sum_{k=m}^n \binom{n-m}{k-m} \\
 &= \binom{n}{m} \sum_{k=0}^{n-m} \binom{n-m}{k} \\
 &= \binom{n}{m} 2^{n-m} \qquad \qquad \qquad 1.14
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{c} \qquad \qquad \qquad & 1.13 \\
 (1-x)^n &= \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} x^k \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^m (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} x^k + \sum_{k=m+1}^n (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} x^k \\
 x &= 1 \\
 \sum_{k=0}^m (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} &= \sum_{k=m+1}^n (-1)^{k+1} \binom{n}{k} \\
 &= \sum_{k=m+1}^n (-1)^{k+1} \left[\binom{n-1}{k} + \binom{n-1}{k-1} \right] \qquad \qquad \qquad 1.9 \\
 &= \sum_{k=m+1}^n (-1)^{k+1} \binom{n-1}{k} + \sum_{k=m+1}^n (-1)^{k+1} \binom{n-1}{k-1} \\
 &= \sum_{k=m+1}^n (-1)^{k+1} \binom{n-1}{k} + \sum_{k=m}^{n-1} (-1)^k \binom{n-1}{k} \\
 &= (-1)^{n+1} \binom{n-1}{n} + \sum_{k=m+1}^{n-1} (-1)^{k+1} \binom{n-1}{k} + \sum_{k=m+1}^{n-1} (-1)^k \binom{n-1}{k} + (-1)^m \binom{n-1}{m} \\
 &= (-1)^m \binom{n-1}{m} + (-1)^{n+1} \binom{n-1}{n}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$= (-1)^m \binom{n-1}{m}$$

$$\therefore \sum_{k=0}^m (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} = (-1)^m \binom{n-1}{m}$$

1.25

$$\text{a} \quad \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n+k}{m} = \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n}{k} 2^k$$

$$\text{b} \quad \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n+k}{m} = (-1)^m \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n+k}{k} (-2)^k$$

证明: a

$$\begin{aligned} &= \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n+k}{m} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^m \frac{m!}{k!(m-k)!} \cdot \frac{(n+k)!}{m!((n+k-m))!} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^m \frac{1}{k!(m-k)!} \cdot \frac{(n+k)!}{(n+k-m)!} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^m \frac{(n+k)!}{k!n!} \cdot \frac{n!}{(m-k)!(n-(m-k))!} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{n+k}{k} \binom{n}{m-k} = \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{n+k}{n} \binom{n}{m-k} \end{aligned} \quad 1.8$$

$$= \sum_{j=m}^0 \binom{n+m-j}{n} \binom{n}{j} \quad j=m-k$$

$$= \sum_{j=0}^m \binom{n}{j} \binom{n+m-j}{n}$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n}{k} 2^k$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{+\infty} \binom{m}{k} \binom{n}{k} \sum_{j=0}^{+\infty} \binom{k}{j} \quad 1.14$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{+\infty} \binom{m}{k} \sum_{j=0}^{+\infty} \binom{n}{k} \binom{k}{j} = \sum_{k=0}^{+\infty} \binom{m}{k} \sum_{j=0}^{+\infty} \binom{n}{j} \binom{n-j}{k-j} \quad 21$$

$$= \sum_{j=0}^{+\infty} \binom{n}{j} \sum_{k=0}^{+\infty} \binom{m}{k} \binom{n-j}{k-j} = \sum_{j=0}^{+\infty} \binom{n}{j} \sum_{k=0}^{+\infty} \binom{m}{k} \binom{n-j}{n-k} = \sum_{j=0}^{+\infty} \binom{n}{j} \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{m}{k} \binom{n-j}{n-k}$$

$$= \sum_{j=0}^{+\infty} \binom{n}{j} \binom{m+n-j}{n} \quad 1.29$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \sum_{j=0}^m \binom{n}{j} \binom{n+m-j}{n} + \sum_{j=m+1}^{\infty} \binom{n}{j} \binom{n+m-j}{n} \\
 &= \sum_{j=0}^m \binom{n}{j} \binom{n+m-j}{n}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n+k}{m} = \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n}{k} 2^k$$

b 1.13

$$\left(1 + \frac{2t}{1-t}\right)^n = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{n}{k} \left(\frac{2t}{1-t}\right)^k$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\frac{1}{1-t} \\
 \frac{1}{1-t} \left(1 + \frac{2t}{1-t}\right)^n &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{n}{k} 2^k \cdot t^k (1-t)^{-(k+1)} \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{n}{k} 2^k \cdot t^k \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{k+j}{j} (-t)^j \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \binom{n}{k} 2^k \binom{k+j}{j} t^{k+j} \\
 &= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=k}^{\infty} \binom{n}{k} 2^k \binom{m}{m-k} t^m \\
 &= \sum_{m=k}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{n}{k} \binom{m}{k} 2^k t^m \\
 &= \sum_{m=k}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n}{k} 2^k t^m
 \end{aligned}$$

1.18

$k+j=m$

$k>m \quad \binom{m}{k}=0$

$$\frac{1}{1-t} \left(1 + \frac{2t}{1-t}\right)^n = \sum_{m=k}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n}{k} 2^k t^m$$

A

1.18

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\left(1 - \frac{2t}{1+t}\right)^{-(n+1)} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \cdot \binom{n+k}{k} \left(\frac{-2t}{1+t}\right)^k \\
 &\frac{1}{1+t} \\
 \frac{1}{1+t} \left(1 - \frac{2t}{1+t}\right)^{-(n+1)} &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \cdot \binom{n+k}{k} (-2)^k t^k (1+t)^{-(k+1)} \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \cdot \binom{n+k}{k} (-2)^k t^k \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{k+j}{j} t^j
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \cdot \binom{n+k}{k} (-2)^k \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{k+j}{j} t^{k+j} \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=k}^{\infty} (-1)^k \binom{n+k}{k} (-2)^k (-1)^{m-k} \binom{m}{m-k} t^m \\
 &= \sum_{m=k}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{n+k}{k} (-2)^k (-1)^m \binom{m}{k} t^m \\
 &= \sum_{m=k}^{\infty} (-1)^m \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n+k}{k} (-2)^k t^m \quad \Theta \quad k > m \quad \binom{m}{k} = 0
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\frac{1}{1-t} \left(1 - \frac{2t}{1+t}\right)^{-(n+1)} \sum_{m=k}^{\infty} (-1)^m \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n+k}{k} (-2)^k t^m \quad \text{B}$$

$$\frac{1}{1-t} \left(1 + \frac{2t}{1-t}\right)^n = \frac{(1+t)^n}{(1-t)^{n+1}} = \frac{1}{1+t} \left(1 - \frac{2t}{1+t}\right)^{-(n+1)}$$

A

B

A

B

$$\sum_{m=k}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n}{k} 2^k t^m = \sum_{m=k}^{\infty} (-1)^m \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n+k}{k} (-2)^k t^m$$

t^m

$$\sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n}{k} 2^k = (-1)^m \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n+k}{k} (-2)^k$$

25.a

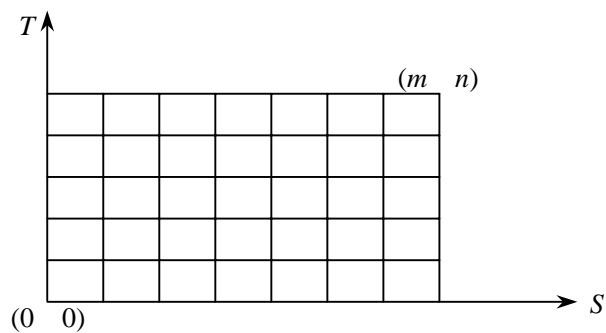
$$\sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n+k}{m} = \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n}{k} 2^k = (-1)^m \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n+k}{k} (-2)^k$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n+k}{m} = (-1)^m \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} \binom{n+k}{k} (-2)^k$$

1.26

1-1

$$S(0 \ 0) \quad T(m \ n) \quad \binom{m+n}{m}$$



1-1

证明: $S \quad T \quad E$
 $N \quad S \quad T \quad E \quad N$
 $m \quad E \quad n \quad N \quad E \quad N$
 $B = \{m \cdot E, n \cdot N\}$

$$\frac{(m+n)!}{m!n!} = \binom{m+n}{n}$$

$$S(0 \ 0) \quad T(m \ n) \quad \binom{m+n}{m}$$

1.27

$$\binom{-r}{k} = (-1)^k \binom{r+k-1}{k}$$

证明: 1.6 $k \leq 0$
 $k > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \binom{-r}{k} &= \frac{(-r)(-r-1)\cdots(-r-k+1)}{k!} \\ &= \frac{(-1)^k r(r+1)\cdots(r+k-1)}{k!} \\ &= \frac{(-1)^k (r+k-1)(r+k-2)\cdots r}{k!} \\ &= (-1)^k \binom{r+k-1}{k} \end{aligned}$$

第二章 鸽笼原理与 Ramsey 定理

一、内容提要

定理 2.1 $n+1$ n

定理 2.2 q_i $(i=1, 2, \dots, n)$ $q \geq q_1 + q_2 + \dots + q_n - n + 1$ q

推论 1 n i i q_i $n(r-1)+1$ n r

推论 2 $m_i (i=1, 2, \dots, n)$

$$\frac{\left(\sum_{i=1}^n m_i\right)}{n} > r-1$$

i $m_i \geq r$

定理 2.3 6

定理 2.4 10

定理 2.5 10

定理 2.6 20

定义 2.1 a, b $N(a, b)$ a b

$N(a, b)$ Ramsey

定理 2.7 $N(a, b) = N(b, a)$ 2.1

$N(a, 2) = a$ 2.2

定理 2.8 $a, b \geq 2$ $N(a, b)$
 $N(a, b) \leq N(a-1, b) + N(a, b-1)$ 2.3

定理 2.9 $N(a-1, b)$ $N(a, b-1)$
 $N(a, b) \leq N(a-1, b) + N(a, b-1) - 1$ 2.4

定理 2.1 $N(3, 3) = 6$ 2.5

$N(3, 4) = N(4, 3) = 9$ 2.6

$$N(3\ 5) = N(5\ 3) = 14 \quad 2.7$$

定义 2.2 n r $c_1\ c_2$

L c_r N $a_1\ a_2\ \dots\ a_r$

c_1 a_1

c_2 a_2

\dots \dots

c_r a_r

N $a_1\ a_2\ \dots\ a_r$ Ramsey

定理 2.11 1 $a_1\ a_2\ a_3$ $N(a_1\ a_2\ a_3)$

定理 2.12 r $a_1\ a_2\ \dots\ a_r \geq 2$ Ramsey N $a_1\ a_2\ \dots\ a_r$

定义 2.3 n r m

$c_1\ c_2\ \dots\ c_m$ N $a_1\ a_2\ \dots\ a_m\ r$

a_1 r c_1

a_2 r c_2

\dots \dots

a_m r c_m

N $a_1\ a_2\ \dots\ a_m\ r$ Ramsey

定理 2.13 r $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m \geq r$ Ramsey $N(a_1\ a_2\ \dots\ a_m\ r)$

注意: $r=1$ 2.13 \dots 2.2 2.13

二、习题解答

2.1 A 50 15 18

证明:

方法一:

$$50 > 49 = 4 \times 13 - 1 + 1$$

$$13 > 12 = 2 \times 13 - 1 + 1$$

2

方法二:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 15 & & 18 & & 4 & & 48 \\ & & & & 50 > 49 = 48 \times & 2-1 & +1 \\ & & 1 & & & 2 & 2 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} 2.2 & & a \\ (a+0.1) & & 0.005 \end{array}$$

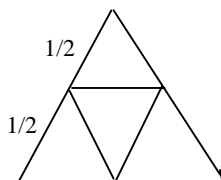
解:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & a & & (a+0.005) & & a+0.005 \\ a+0.01 & & a+0.01 & & a+0.015 & & \dots\dots \\ a+0.095 & & a+0.1 & & 20 & & 20 \\ & 21 & & & & & 0.005 \\ & & 21 & & & & \end{array}$$

2.3

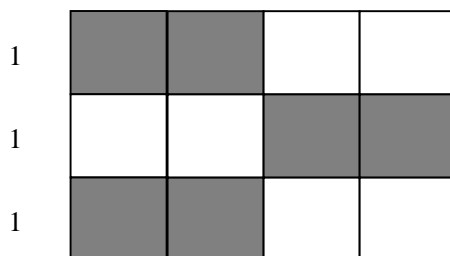
证明:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & 1 & & 5 & & \leq 1/2 & \\ & 1 & & 1/2 & 4 & & 2-1 \quad 5 \\ 4 & & & & & & 2 \\ \leq 1/2 & & & & & & \end{array}$$



2.4

$$\begin{array}{ccc} 3 \times 4 & 7 & \leq \sqrt{5} \end{array}$$



2-2

证明: 3×4

$$\sqrt{1^2 + 2^2} = \sqrt{5}$$

2-2

7

6

$$\leq \sqrt{5}$$

$$\leq \sqrt{5}$$

2.5

2-3

2-3

证明:

$$2 \times 2 = 4$$

4

5

5

2.6

5

3

3

证明:

5

a_1

a_2

a_3

a_4

a_5

a_i

3

$b_i (i=1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 4 \ 5)$

$$0 \leq b_i \leq 2$$

$$0 \ 1 \ 2$$

$$b_1 \ b_2 \ b_3 \ b_4 \ b_5$$

1

2

3

$$1 \ b_1 \ b_2 \ b_3 \ b_4 \ b_5$$

5

3

a_i

3

$$2 \ b_1 \ b_2 \ b_3 \ b_4 \ b_5$$

$$5 \geq 2 \times 3 - 1 + 1$$

1

$$b_1 \ b_2 \ b_3 \ b_4 \ b_5$$

a_i

3

3

a_i

3

5

3

3

2.7

37

60

1

13

证明:

a_1

a_2

a_j

.....

j

$$j=1 \ 2 \ L \ 37$$

$$a_1 \ a_2 \ L \ a_{37}$$

1

$$a_1 \geq 1 \ a_{37} = 60$$

$$a_1 + 13 \ a_2 + 13 \ L \ a_{37} + 13$$

$$a_{37} + 13 = 73$$

74

a_1

a_2

L

a_{37}

$$a_1 + 13$$

$$a_2 + 13$$

L

$$a_{37} + 13$$

$$[1 \ 73]$$

$$74 \quad a_1 \ a_2 \ L \ a_{37} \quad i \ j \quad a_i = a_j + 13$$

$$a_1 + 13 \ L \ a_{37} + 13$$

$$a_i - a_j = 13$$

$$j+1 \ j+2 \ L \ i \quad 13$$

$$2.8 \quad n \quad a_1 \ a_2 \ \cdots \ a_n \quad n$$

$$n$$

证明:

方法一:

$$n \quad 0 \ 1 \ 2 \ L \ n-1 \quad n \quad a_1 \ a_2 \ \cdots \ a_n$$

$$n \quad n \quad n$$

$$n \quad 0 \ 1 \ 2 \ \cdots \ n-1 \quad i \ n-i \quad n$$

方法二:

$$n$$

$$0 < a_1 \leq a_2 \leq L \leq a_n$$

$$0 < a_1 < a_2 < L < a_n$$

$$i \ j \ 1 \leq i < j \leq n \quad a_j - a_i \quad a_j + a_i$$

$$n$$

$$b_i = a_n - a_i (i=1, 2, L, n-1) \quad b_n = a_n + a_1$$

$$b_i (i=1, 2, L, n) \quad n \quad n$$

$$c_1, c_2, L, c_n$$

$$1 \leq c_i \leq n-1 \ (i=1, 2, L, n)$$

$$1 \ 2 \ L \ n-1 \quad n-1 \quad c_1, c_2, L, c_n \quad n$$

$$c_i, c_j \ 1 \leq i < j \leq n$$

$$c_i = c_j$$

$$j=n \quad (a_n - a_i) - k_i n = (a_n + a_1) - k_n n \quad k_i \ k_n$$

$$a_1 + a_i = (k_n - k_i) n$$

$$1 \leq i < j \leq n-1 \quad (a_n - a_i) - k_i n = (a_n - a_j) - k_j n \quad k_i \ k_j$$

$$a_j - a_i = (k_j - k_i) n$$

$$2.9 \quad a_1 \ a_2 \ \cdots \ a_n \ 1 \ 2 \ L \ n \quad n$$

$$(a_1 - 1)(a_2 - 2) \cdots (a_n - n)$$

证明:

方法一:

$$n \quad 1, 2, L, n \quad \frac{n+1}{2} \quad a_1 \ a_2 \ \cdots \ a_n \quad 1, 2, L, n$$

$$2 \times \frac{n+1}{2} = (n+1) \quad n$$

方法二:

$$n \quad 1, 2, L, n \quad \frac{n+1}{2} \quad \frac{n-1}{2}$$

$$1 \quad (a_1-1) \ (a_2-2) \ L \ (a_n-n) \quad " \quad - \quad " \quad " \quad - \quad "$$

$$a_1 \ a_2 \ \cdots \ a_n \quad 1, 2, L, n \quad 1, 2, L, n$$

$$n \quad (a_1-1) \ (a_2-2) \ L \ (a_n-n)$$

$$" \quad " \quad " \quad " \quad (a_1-1)(a_2-2) \cdots (a_n-n)$$

$$2.10 \quad 52 \quad 100$$

$$\text{证明:} \quad 52 \quad a_1 \ a_2 \ \cdots \ a_{52} \quad 100 \quad r_1 \ r_2 \ \cdots \ r_{52}$$

$$100 \quad 0 \ 1 \ 2 \ L \ 99 \quad 100 \quad 51 \quad \{0\}$$

$$\{1 \ 99\} \ \{2 \ 98\} \ L \ \{49 \ 51\} \ \{50\} \quad 51 \quad 52$$

$$52 \quad 51 \quad r_i, r_j$$

$$r_i = r_j \quad r_i + r_j = 100 \quad a_i - a_j \quad 100 \quad a_i + a_j \quad 100$$

$$2.11 \quad N \ 4 \ 4 \leq 18$$

$$\text{证明:} \quad 2.8 \quad N \ 4 \ 4 \leq N \ 3 \ 4 + N \ 4 \ 3 = 9+9=18$$

$$2.12 \quad N(a_1 \ a_2 \ \cdots \ a_n) \leq N(a_1-1 \ a_2 \ \cdots \ a_n)$$

$$+ N(a_1 \ a_2 - 1 \ \cdots \ a_n)$$

$$L \ L$$

$$+ N(a_1 \ a_2 \ \cdots \ a_n - 1)$$

$$\text{证明:} \quad N_i = N(a_1 \ a_2 \ \cdots \ a_i - 1 \ \cdots \ a_n) \quad i=1 \ 2 \ \cdots \ n \quad X = \sum_{i=1}^n N_i \quad X$$

$$n \quad C_i \quad i=1 \ 2 \ \cdots \ n \quad X \quad P$$

$$P \quad X-1$$

$$X-1 = N_1 + N_2 + L + N_n - 1$$

$$\geq N_1 + N_2 + L + N_n - (n-1)$$

$$= N_1 + N_2 + L + N_n - n + 1$$

$$C_1 \ C_2 \ L \ C_n \ n \quad i \ (1 \leq i \leq n)$$

$X-1$		C_i		N_i		N_i		N_i		$N_i=N$		$a_1 \ a_2$	
L		$a_{i-1} \ a_i-1$		$a_{i+1} \ L$		a_n		N_i					
		C_1		a_1									
		C_2		a_2									
		$L \ L$											
		C_{i-1}		a_{i-1}									
		C_i		a_i-1		P		a_i-1		C_i			
a_i				a_i		C_i		a_i					
		C_{i+1}		a_{i+1}									
		$L \ L$											
		C_n		a_n									

$$N(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$$

$$N(a_1 \ a_2 \ \cdots \ a_n) \leq N(a_1-1 \ a_2 \ \cdots \ a_n) + N(a_1 \ a_2-1 \ \cdots \ a_n) + L + N(a_1 \ a_2 \ \cdots \ a_n-1)$$

2.13

$$N(a \ b \ c \ d \ e \ f \ g \ h \ i \ j \ k \ l \ m \ n \ o \ p \ q \ r \ s \ t \ u \ v \ w \ x \ y \ z)$$

$P \quad b$

P

$N(a-1 \ b)$ $a-1$ b

$a-1$ P P a

b

2.14

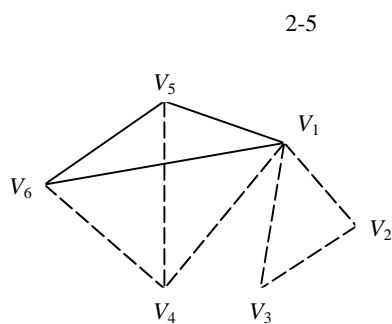
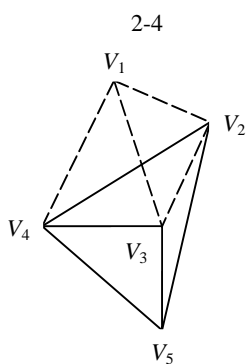
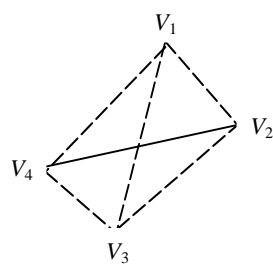
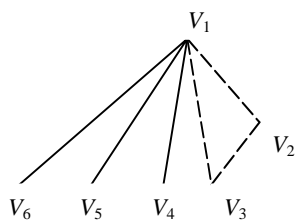
3

证明:

6 $V_1 \ V_2 \ V_3 \ V_4 \ V_5 \ V_6$ 6

2.3

$V_1 \ V_2 \ V_3$ 2-4



2-7

1 $V_1V_4 \ V_1V_5 \ V_1V_6$

$V_5 \ V_6$ $V_1 \ V_5 \ V_6$

2-4 $V_4 \ V_5 \ V_6$

V_4

$V_5 \ V_6$

2 $V_1V_4 \ V_1V_5 \ V_1V_6$

V_1V_4

$V_2V_4 \quad V_3V_4 \quad V_3V_4 \quad V_1 \quad V_3 \quad V_4$
 2-5
 $V_2V_4 \quad V_3V_4 \quad V_4 \quad V_4V_5 \quad 2-6$
 a $V_4V_5 \quad V_4V_6$
 $V_2V_5 \quad V_3V_5 \quad V_2 \quad V_3 \quad V_5 \quad V_2 \quad V_4$
 $V_5 \quad V_3 \quad VV_4 \quad V_5$
 b $V_4V_5 \quad V_4V_6 \quad 2-7 \quad V_1 \quad V_5 \quad V_6$
 $V_1V_5 \quad V_1 \quad V_4 \quad V_5$
 6
 6
 7
 3
 2.15
 17
 证明: $K_{17} \quad V_1 \quad V_1 \quad 16$
 $16 \quad 2.2 \quad 1$
 6 $16=3 \times 6-1+1 \quad 6$
 $K_6 \quad K_6$
 2.3
 2.16 $2n \quad 2 \binom{n}{3}$
 证明: $2n \quad \binom{2n}{3}$
 $r_i \quad i \quad V_i \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad 2n \quad 2n-1 \quad V_i$
 $r_i(2n-1-r_i)$
 $i=1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad 2n \quad 2n$
 $\sum_{i=1}^{2n} r_i(2n-1-r_i)$

$$2n$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{2n} r_i (2n-1-r_i)$$

$$2n$$

$$\binom{2n}{3} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{2n} r_i (2n-1-r_i)$$

$$r_i(2n-1-r_i) \quad r_i = n$$

$$\begin{aligned} \binom{2n}{3} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{2n} r_i (2n-1-r_i) &\geq \binom{2n}{3} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{2n} n(2n-1-n) \\ &= \binom{2n}{3} - n^2(n-1) \\ &= 2 \binom{n}{3} \end{aligned}$$

$$2 \binom{n}{3}$$

注意:

$$2.17 \quad m$$

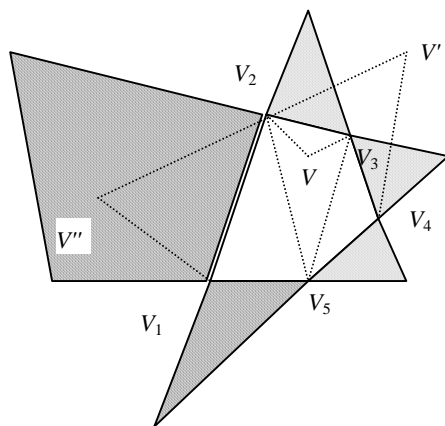
$$m \quad m$$

证明:

证法一:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} m(m-1)/2 & m & n & V_1 & V_2 & \cdots & V_n \\ V_i V_{i+1} & V_{i-1} V_i & V_{i+1} V_{i+2} & V_i = V_n & V_{i+1} = V_1, V_{i+2} = V_2 & & V_i V_{i+1} \\ V_{i-1} V_i & V_{i+1} V_{i+2} & V_i V_{i+1} & n=5 & & & 2-8 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & V_1 & V_2 & \cdots & V_n & 2-8 \\ 2-8 & & V & V' & & & \\ 2-8 & & V'' & & n+1 & V_1 & V_2 & \cdots & V_n & V'' & V_1 & V_2 & \cdots & V_n \\ & m & & V_1 & V_2 & \cdots & V_n & m & & m \\ m & & m & & m & & m \end{array}$$



2-8

证法二:

"

"

m

$$\frac{m(m-1)}{2}$$

k

$V_1 V_2 \cdots V_k \quad k = m$

$k < m$

V

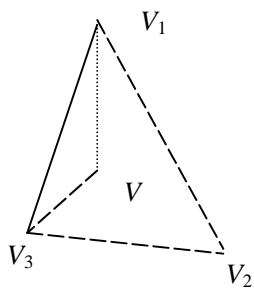
$V \quad V_1 V_2 \cdots V_k$

$$\binom{k}{3}$$

2-9

$V V_1 V_2 V_3$

$k = m$



2-9

第三章 容斥原理

一、内容提要

$$\begin{matrix} A_i & i=1 & 2 & \cdots & m & \subseteq S & A_i & S \\ \bigcap_{i=1}^m A_i & S & p_1 & p_2 & \cdots & p_m & \bigcap_{i=1}^m \overline{A_i} & S \\ p_1 & & p_2 & \cdots & p_m & & & \end{matrix}$$

定理 3.1 S p_1 p_2 \cdots p_m

$$\begin{aligned} |\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \cdots \cap \overline{A_m}| &= |S| - \sum_{i=1}^m |A_i| + \sum_{i < j} |A_i \cap A_j| \\ &\quad - \sum_{i < j < k} |A_i \cap A_j \cap A_k| + \cdots + (-1)^m |A_1 \cap A_2 \cap \cdots \cap A_m| \end{aligned} \quad 3.5$$

$$\begin{aligned} 3.5 \quad & i < j < i < j=1 < 2 < \cdots < m < i < j \\ & i < j < k < i < j < k=1 < 2 < \cdots < m < i < j < k < \cdots < L \\ \text{推论} \quad & S & p_1 & p_2 & \cdots & p_m \end{aligned}$$

$$|A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \cdots \cup A_m| = |A_1| + |A_2| + \cdots + |A_m| - |A_1 \cap A_2| - |A_1 \cap A_3| - \cdots$$

$$+ |A_2 \cap A_3| + \cdots + (-1)^{m+1} |A_1 \cap A_2 \cap \cdots \cap A_m| \quad 3.6$$

定理 3.2 $n \geq 1$

$$D_n = n! \left(1 - \frac{1}{1!} + \frac{1}{2!} - \frac{1}{3!} + \cdots + (-1)^n \frac{1}{n!} \right) \quad 3.7$$

定理 3.3

$$D_n = (n-1)(D_{n-1} + D_{n-2}) \quad 3.8$$

定理 3.4 $n \geq 1$

$$Q_n = n! - \binom{n-1}{1} (n-1)! + \binom{n-1}{2} (n-2)! - \cdots + (-1)^{n-1} \binom{n-1}{n-1} \cdot 1! \quad 3.9$$

定理 3.5 $n \geq 2$

$$Q_n = D_n + D_{n-1} \quad 3.10$$

定义 3.1 $C \quad r_0(C) = 1 \quad n \quad C$

$$R(C) = \sum_{k=0}^n r_k(C) x^k$$

定理 3.6 $C \quad C \quad A \quad C_i \quad C \quad A$
 $C_e \quad C \quad A$

$$R(C) = xR(C_i) + R(C_e) \quad 3.11$$

定义 3.2 $C_1 \quad C_2 \quad C_1 \quad C_2$

定理 3.7 $C \quad C_1 \quad C_2$

$$R(C) = R(C_1)R(C_2) \quad 3.12$$

定理 3.8 n

$$n! - r_1(n-1)! + r_2(n-2)! - \cdots \pm r_n \quad 3.13$$

$$r_i \quad i \quad i=1 \ 2 \ \cdots \ n$$

二、习题解答

3.1 $1 \ 10000 \quad 3 \ 4 \ 5$

解 $S \ 1 \ 10000 \quad A_1 \ S \ 3$

$A_2 \ S \ 4 \quad A_3 \ S \ 5 \quad \overline{A_1} \ \overline{A_2} \ \overline{A_3}$

$S \ 3 \ 4 \ 5$

3.5

$$|\overline{A_1} \ \overline{A_2} \ \overline{A_3}| = |S| - \sum_{i=1}^3 |A_i| + \sum_{i \neq j} |A_i \ \overline{A_j}| - |A_1 \ \overline{A_2} \ \overline{A_3}| \quad 3.5$$

$$|S| = 10000$$

$$|A_1| = \left\lfloor \frac{10000}{3} \right\rfloor = 3333$$

$$|A_2| = \left\lfloor \frac{10000}{4} \right\rfloor = 2500$$

$$|A_3| = \left\lfloor \frac{10000}{5} \right\rfloor = 2000$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_2| = \left\lfloor \frac{10000}{3 \times 4} \right\rfloor = 833$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_3| = \left\lfloor \frac{10000}{3 \times 5} \right\rfloor = 666$$

$$|A_2 \cap A_3| = \left\lfloor \frac{10000}{4 \times 5} \right\rfloor = 500$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3| = \left\lfloor \frac{10000}{3 \times 4 \times 5} \right\rfloor = 166$$

3.5

$$|\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3}| = 10000 - 3333 + 2500 + 2000 - 833 - 666 + 500 - 166 = 4000$$

$$1 \quad 10000 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad 4000$$

3.2 $1 \quad 1000$

$$\text{解: } S = \{1 \quad 2 \quad L \quad 1000\} \quad A_1 \quad 1 \quad 1000 \quad \overline{A_1}$$

$$1 \quad 1000 \quad A_2 \quad 1 \quad 1000 \quad \overline{A_2}$$

$$1 \quad 1000$$

$$\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \quad 1 \quad 1000$$

3.5

$$|\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2}| = |S| - |A_1| - |A_2| + |A_1 \cap A_2| \quad 3.5$$

$$|S| = 1000$$

$$|A_1| = \left\lfloor \sqrt{1000} \right\rfloor = 31$$

$$|A_2| = \left\lfloor \sqrt[3]{1000} \right\rfloor = 10$$

$$A_1 \cap A_2 \quad 1 \quad 1000$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_2| = \left\lfloor \sqrt[6]{1000} \right\rfloor = 3$$

3.5

$$|\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2}| = 1000 - 31 - 10 + 3 = 962$$

$$1 \quad 1000 \quad 962$$

3.3 120

$$12 \quad 20 \quad 16 \quad 28$$

48

56

16

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{解:} & S & & A_1 & S & & A_2 & S \\ & & & A_3 & S & & \overline{A_1} \text{ I } \overline{A_2} \text{ I } \overline{A_3} \end{array}$$

3.5

$$|\overline{A_1} \text{ I } \overline{A_2} \text{ I } \overline{A_3}| = |S| - \sum_{i=1}^3 |A_i| + \sum_{i \neq j} |A_i \text{ I } A_j| - |A_1 \text{ I } A_2 \text{ I } A_3| \quad 3.5$$

$$|S| = 120 \quad |A_1| = 48 \quad |A_2| = 56$$

20

$$|A_1 \text{ I } A_2| = 20 + 12 = 32 \quad |A_1 \text{ I } A_3| = 16 \quad |A_2 \text{ I } A_3| = 28$$

$$|A_1 \text{ I } A_2 \text{ I } A_3| = 12$$

3.5

$$16 = 120 - 48 - 56 + |A_3| + 32 + 16 + 28 - 12$$

$$|A_3| = 64$$

64

$$3.4 \quad 10 \quad a \quad a \quad b \quad b \quad c \quad c \quad d \quad d \quad e \quad e$$

$$\text{解:} \quad S \quad 10$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A_1 & S & a & & A_2 & S & b \\ A_3 & S & c & & A_4 & S & d \\ A_5 & S & e & & \overline{A_1} \text{ I } \overline{A_2} \text{ I } \overline{A_3} \text{ I } \overline{A_4} \text{ I } \overline{A_5} \end{array}$$

3.5

$$|\overline{A_1} \text{ I } \overline{A_2} \text{ I } \overline{A_3} \text{ I } \overline{A_4} \text{ I } \overline{A_5}| = |S| - \sum_{i=1}^5 |A_i| + \sum_{i \neq j} |A_i \text{ I } A_j| - \cdots - |A_1 \text{ I } A_2 \text{ I } A_3 \text{ I } A_4 \text{ I } A_5| \quad 3.5$$

1.4

$$|S| = \frac{10!}{2!2!2!2!2!}$$

$$|A_i| = \frac{9!}{1!2!2!2!2!} \quad (i = 1, 2, \dots, 5)$$

$$|A_i \text{ I } A_j| = \frac{8!}{1!1!2!2!2!} \quad (i = 1, 2, \dots, 5; j = 1, 2, \dots, 5; i \neq j)$$

$$|A_i \text{ I } A_j \text{ I } A_k| = \frac{7!}{1!1!1!2!2!} \quad (i = 1, 2, \dots, 5; j = 1, 2, \dots, 5; k = 1, 2, \dots, 5; i \neq j \neq k)$$

$$|A_i \cap A_j \cap A_k \cap A_l| = \frac{6!}{1!1!1!1!2!}$$

$$(i=1, 2, \dots, 5 \quad j=1, 2, \dots, 5 \quad k=1, 2, \dots, 5 \quad l=1, 2, \dots, 5 \quad i \neq j \neq k \neq l)$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3 \cap A_4 \cap A_5| = \frac{5!}{1!1!1!1!1!}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & 3.5 \\ & |\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3} \cap \overline{A_4} \cap \overline{A_5}| \\ &= \frac{10!}{2!2!2!2!2!} - \binom{5}{1} \frac{9!}{2!2!2!2!} + \binom{5}{2} \frac{8!}{2!2!2!} - \binom{5}{3} \frac{7!}{2!2!} + \binom{5}{4} \frac{6!}{2!} - \binom{5}{5} 5! \\ &= 113400 - 5 \times 22680 + 10 \times 5040 - 10 \times 1260 + 5 \times 360 - 120 \\ &= 39480 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & 10 \quad a \quad a \quad b \quad b \quad c \quad c \quad d \quad d \quad e \quad e \\ & 39480 \\ & 3.5 \quad B = \{3 \cdot a \quad 4 \cdot b \quad 2 \cdot c\} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{解:} \quad S \quad B \quad 1.4 \\ & \quad \quad abbbbcaca \quad abbbacacb \end{aligned}$$

$$|S| = \frac{9!}{3!4!2!} = 1260$$

$$\begin{aligned} & A_1 \quad S \quad 3 \quad a \quad A_2 \quad S \quad 4 \quad b \\ & A_3 \quad S \quad 2 \quad c \quad \overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & 3.5 \\ & \overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3} = |S| - \sum_{i=1}^3 |A_i| + \sum_{i \neq j} |A_i \cap A_j| - |A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3| \quad 3.5 \end{aligned}$$

$$1.4$$

$$|A_1| = \frac{7!}{4!2!} = 105 \quad |A_2| = \frac{6!}{3!2!} = 60 \quad |A_3| = \frac{8!}{4!3!} = 280$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_2| = 4!/2! = 12 \quad |A_1 \cap A_3| = 6!/4! = 30$$

$$|A_2 \cap A_3| = 5!/3! = 20 \quad |A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3| = 3! = 6$$

$$\begin{aligned} & 3.5 \\ & |\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3}| = 1260 - 105 - 60 - 280 + 12 + 30 + 20 - 6 = 871 \end{aligned}$$

$$871$$

$$\begin{aligned} & 3.6 \quad 5 \quad 1 \quad 1 \\ & \text{解:} \quad S \quad 5 \quad P_i \quad 5 \quad i \\ & 1 \quad 0 \quad A_i \quad S \quad P_i \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \end{aligned}$$

$$5 \quad \overline{A_1} \text{ I } \overline{A_2} \text{ I } \overline{A_3} \text{ I } \overline{A_4} \text{ I } \overline{A_5} \quad S \quad 1 \quad 1 \quad 3.5$$

$$|\overline{A_1} \text{ I } \overline{A_2} \text{ I } \overline{A_3} \text{ I } \overline{A_4} \text{ I } \overline{A_5}| = |S| - \sum_{i=1}^5 |A_i| + \sum_{i \neq j} |A_i \text{ I } A_j| + L - |A_1 \text{ I } A_2 \text{ I } A_3 \text{ I } A_4 \text{ I } A_5| \quad 3.5$$

$$|S| = 2^5$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} A_1 & & 5 & & 1 & & 1 & & 2 & & 0 & & 3 & & 4 & & 5 \\ x & x & & 0 & 1 & & & & & & & & & & & & \\ A_1 & & & 10xxx & & & & & & & & & & & & & \end{array}$$

$$|A_1| = 2^3$$

$$|A_2| = 2^2 \quad |A_3| = 2^2 \quad |A_4| = 2^2 \quad |A_5| = 2^3$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} A_1 \text{ I } A_2 & & 5 & & 1 & & 1 & & 2 & & 1 \\ 3 & & 0 & & 4 & & 5 & & x & & A_1 \text{ I } A_2 & & 110xx \end{array}$$

$$|A_1 \text{ I } A_2| = 0$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} A_1 \text{ I } A_3 & & 5 & & 1 & & 1 & & 3 & & 1 & & 2 \\ 0 & & 4 & & 0 & & 5 & & x & & A_1 \text{ I } A_2 & & 1010x \end{array}$$

$$|A_1 \text{ I } A_3| = 2$$

$$|A_1 \text{ I } A_4| = 1, |A_1 \text{ I } A_5| = 2 \quad |A_2 \text{ I } A_3| = 0, |A_2 \text{ I } A_4| = 1, |A_2 \text{ I } A_5| = 1$$

$$|A_3 \text{ I } A_4| = 0, |A_3 \text{ I } A_5| = 2 \quad |A_4 \text{ I } A_5| = 0$$

$$|A_i \text{ I } A_j \text{ I } A_k| \quad (i=1, 2, L, 5 \quad j=1, 2, L, 5 \quad k=1, 2, L, 5 \quad i \neq j \neq k)$$

$$|A_1 \text{ I } A_3 \text{ I } A_5| = 1 \quad 0$$

$$|A_i \text{ I } A_j \text{ I } A_k \text{ I } A_l| = 0 \quad (i=1, 2, L, 5; j=1, 2, L, 5; k=1, 2, L, 5; l=1, 2, L, 5; i \neq j \neq k \neq l)$$

$$|A_1 \text{ I } A_2 \text{ I } A_3 \text{ I } A_4 \text{ I } A_5| = 0$$

3.5

$$|\overline{A_1} \text{ I } \overline{A_2} \text{ I } \overline{A_3} \text{ I } \overline{A_4} \text{ I } \overline{A_5}| = 2^5 - (2^3 + 2^2 + 2^2 + 2^2 + 2^3) + 9 - 1 + 0 - 0 = 12$$

$$5 \quad 1 \quad 1 \quad 12$$

$$|\overline{A_1} \text{ I } \overline{A_2} \text{ I } \overline{A_3}| = |S| - \sum_{i=1}^3 |A_i| + \sum_{i \neq j} |A_i \text{ I } A_j| - |A_1 \text{ I } A_2 \text{ I } A_3| \quad 3.5$$

$$|A_1 \text{ I } A_2 \text{ I } A_3| = 16!$$

26 *a b c L z* john paul smite
26!−2·23!−22!+20!+2·19!−16!

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & A_i & & S & & P_i & \\ \overline{A_1} & \overline{A_2} & \overline{A_3} & & & & \\ S & & 3 & & 8 & & 9 & n \end{array}$$

$$|A_1 \text{ I } A_2 \text{ I } A_3| = 5^n$$

• 39.

$$|\overline{A_1} \text{ I } \overline{A_2} \text{ I } \overline{A_3}| = 8^n - 3 \cdot 7^n + 3 \cdot 6^n - 5^n$$

$$n \quad 8^n - 3 \times 7^n + 3 \times 6^n - 5^n$$

注意:

§ 4.3

9

3.9

25

14

12

6

5

6

解:

S 25

F

S

B

S

P

S

$\overline{B} \text{ I } \overline{F} \text{ I } \overline{P}$

S

3.5

$$|\overline{B} \text{ I } \overline{F} \text{ I } \overline{P}| = |S| - |B| - |F| - |P| + |B \text{ I } F| + |B \text{ I } P| + |F \text{ I } P| - |B \text{ I } F \text{ I } P| \quad 3.5$$

$$|S| = 25 \quad |F| = 14 \quad |P| = 12 \quad |B| = 6 \quad |P \text{ I } F| = 6 \quad |B \text{ I } F| = 5 \quad |P \text{ I } F \text{ I } B| = 2$$

6

5

5

$$|B \text{ I } P| = 6 - 5 + 2 = 3$$

3.5

$$\begin{aligned} |\overline{B} \text{ I } \overline{F} \text{ I } \overline{P}| &= |S| - |B| - |F| - |P| + |B \text{ I } F| + |B \text{ I } P| + |F \text{ I } P| - |B \text{ I } F \text{ I } P| \\ &= 25 - 6 - 14 - 12 + 5 + 3 + 6 - 2 \\ &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

5

3.10

$$B = \{3 \cdot a \ 4 \cdot b \ 5 \cdot c\} \quad 10-$$

解:

$$B' = \{\infty \cdot a, \infty \cdot b, \infty \cdot c\}$$

B'

10-

S

1.11

$$|S| = F \quad 3 \quad 10 = \binom{3+10-1}{10} = 66$$

p_1

S

4

a

p_2

S

5

b

p_3

S

6

c

$A_i \ i=1 \ 2 \ 3$

S

$p_i \ i=1 \ 2 \ 3$

B 10-

S

$p_1 \ p_2 \ p_3$

3.5

$$|\overline{A_1} \text{ I } \overline{A_2} \text{ I } \overline{A_3}| = |S| - \sum_{i=1}^3 |A_i| + \sum_{i \neq j} |A_i \text{ I } A_j| - |A_1 \text{ I } A_2 \text{ I } A_3| \quad 3.5$$

$$|S| = 66$$

3.5

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & A_1 & & 10- & & 4 & a \\
 & B' & & 6- & & B' & 6- & 4 & a \\
 A_1 & 10- & & A_1 & 10- & & B' & 6-
 \end{array}$$

$$|A_1| = F \quad 3 \quad 6 = \binom{3+6-1}{6} = 28$$

$$|A_2| = F \quad 3 \quad 5 = \binom{3+5-1}{5} = 21$$

$$|A_3| = F \quad 3 \quad 4 = \binom{3+4-1}{4} = 15$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_2| = F \quad 3 \quad 1 = \binom{3+1-1}{1} = 3$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_3| = F \quad 3 \quad 0 = \binom{3+0-1}{0} = 1$$

$$|A_2 \cap A_3| = 0 \quad 5+6=11>10$$

$$\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3} = 0$$

3.5

$$|\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3}| = 66 - 28 + 21 + 15 - 3 + 1 + 0 - 0 = 6$$

$$10 - 6$$

注意:

$$3.11 \quad B = \{\infty \cdot a \quad 3 \cdot b \quad 5 \cdot c \quad 7 \cdot d\} \quad 10-$$

$$\text{解:} \quad B = \{\infty \cdot a, \infty \cdot b, \infty \cdot c, \infty \cdot d\} \quad B \quad 10-$$

$$S \quad 1.11$$

$$|S| = F \quad 4 \quad 10 = \binom{4+10-1}{10} = 286$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 p_1 & S & & \infty & a & & p_2 & S & & 4 \\
 b & & p_3 & S & & 6 & c & & p_4 & S \\
 & 8 & d & & A_i & i=1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & S \\
 4 & & & & B & 10- & & & S & & p_i & i=1 & 2 & 3 \\
 & & & & & & & & & & p_1 & p_2 & p_3 & p_4
 \end{array}$$

$$|\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3} \cap \overline{A_4}|$$

$$=|S| - \sum_{i=1}^4 |A_i| + \sum_{i \neq j} |A_i \cap A_j| - \sum_{i \neq j \neq k} |A_i \cap A_j \cap A_k| + |A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3 \cap A_4| \quad 3.5$$

$$|S|=286 \quad 3.5$$

$$A_1 \quad 10- \quad \infty \quad a$$

$$|A_1|=0$$

$$A_2 \quad 10- \quad 4 \quad b \quad 4 \quad b$$

$$B' \quad 6- \quad B' \quad 6- \quad 4 \quad b \quad A_2$$

$$10- \quad A_2 \quad 10- \quad B' \quad 6-$$

$$|A_2|=F \quad 4 \quad 6 = \binom{4+6-1}{6} = 84$$

$$|A_3|=F \quad 4 \quad 4 = \binom{4+4-1}{4} = 35$$

$$|A_4|=F \quad 4 \quad 2 = \binom{4+2-1}{2} = 10$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_i|=0 \quad \infty > 10 \quad i=2 \quad 3 \quad 4$$

$$|A_2 \cap A_3|=F \quad 4 \quad 0 = \binom{4+0-1}{0} = 1$$

$$|A_2 \cap A_4|=0 \quad 4+8=12 > 10$$

$$|A_3 \cap A_4|=0$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_i \cap A_j|=0 \quad \infty > 10 \quad i=2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad j=2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad i \neq j$$

$$|A_2 \cap A_3 \cap A_4|=0 \quad 4+6+8=18 > 10$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3 \cap A_4|=0 \quad \infty > 10$$

$$3.5$$

$$|\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3} \cap \overline{A_4}| = 286 - 0 + 84 + 35 + 10 + 0 + 0 + 0 + 1 + 0 + 0 - 0 + 0 + 0 + 0 + 0$$

$$=158$$

$$B \quad 10 \quad 158$$

$$3.12 \quad x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = 14 \quad 8$$

$$\text{解: } y_i = x_i - 1 \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad y_1 + y_2 + y_3 = 11 \quad 7$$

$$\S 1.3 \quad 8 \quad B = \{7 \cdot a \ 7 \cdot b \ 7 \cdot c\} \quad 11-$$

$$B' = \{\infty \cdot a, \infty \cdot b, \infty \cdot c\} \quad B' \quad 11- \quad S$$

$$1.11$$

$$|S| = F \quad 3 \quad 11 = \binom{3+11-1}{11} = 78$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} p_1 & S & 8 & a & p_2 & S & 8 \\ b & & p_3 & S & 8 & c & A_i \ i=1 \ 2 \ 3 \\ S & & p_i \ i=1 \ 2 \ 3 & & & B & 11- \quad S \end{array}$$

$$p_1 \ p_2 \ p_3 \quad 3.5$$

$$|\overline{A_1} \ I \ \overline{A_2} \ I \ \overline{A_3}| = |S| - \sum_{i=1}^3 |A_i| + \sum |A_i \ I \ A_j| - |A_1 \ I \ A_2 \ I \ A_3| \quad 3.5$$

$$|S| = 78 \quad 3.5$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A_1 & 11- & 8 & a & & 8 & a \\ B' & 3- & B' & 3- & 8 & a & \\ A_1 & 11- & A_1 & 11- & B' & 3- & \end{array}$$

$$|A_1| = F \quad 3 \quad 3 = \binom{3+3-1}{3} = 10$$

$$|A_2| = F \quad 3 \quad 3 = \binom{3+3-1}{3} = 10$$

$$|A_3| = F \quad 3 \quad 3 = \binom{3+3-1}{3} = 10$$

$$|A_1 \ I \ A_2| = 0 \quad 8+8=16>11$$

$$|A_1 \ I \ A_3| = 0$$

$$|A_2 \ I \ A_3| = 0$$

$$|A_1 \ I \ A_2 \ I \ A_3| = 0$$

$$3.5$$

$$|\overline{A_1} \ I \ \overline{A_2} \ I \ \overline{A_3}| = 78 - 10+10+10 + 0+0+0 - 0 = 48$$

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = 14 \quad 8 \quad 48$$

$$3.13 \quad 1 \ 2 \ L \ 8$$

解: $S = \{1, 2, \dots, 8\}$

$$A_1 = S - 2$$

$$A_2 = S - 4$$

$$A_3 = S - 6$$

$$A_4 = S - 8$$

$$\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3} \cap \overline{A_4} = S$$

3.5

$$|\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3} \cap \overline{A_4}| = |S| - \sum_{i=1}^4 |A_i| + \sum_{i \neq j} |A_i \cap A_j| - \sum_{i \neq j \neq k} |A_i \cap A_j \cap A_k| + |A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3 \cap A_4| \quad 3.5$$

$$|S| = 8! \quad |A_i| = 7! \quad |A_i \cap A_j| = 7! (i = 1, 2, 3, 4)$$

$$A_1 \cap A_2 = 2 \times 4$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_2| = 6!$$

$$|A_i \cap A_j| = 6! \quad (i, j = 1, 2, 3, 4 \quad i \neq j)$$

$$|A_i \cap A_j \cap A_k| = 5! \quad (i, j, k = 1, 2, 3, 4 \quad i \neq j \neq k)$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3 \cap A_4| = 4!$$

3.5

$$|\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3} \cap \overline{A_4}| = 8! - \binom{4}{1} 7! + \binom{4}{2} 6! - \binom{4}{3} 5! + \binom{4}{4} 4! = 24024$$

$$1, 2, \dots, 8$$

24024

注意:

$$3.14 \quad 1, 2, \dots, 8 \quad 4$$

$$\text{解: } 4 \quad \binom{8}{4} \quad 4$$

$$D_4 \quad 3.2 \quad 4$$

$$\binom{8}{4} D_4 = 630$$

$$3.15 \quad 9 \quad a \quad a \quad a \quad b \quad b \quad b \quad c \quad c \quad c$$

解: 9 1 2 L 9

p_1 1 2

p_2 2 3

L L

p_8 8 9

S 9 A_i p_i

$i=1\ 2\ \cdots\ 8$ $\overline{A_1} \ I\ \overline{A_2} \ I\ L\ I\ \overline{A_8}$

3.5

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \overline{A_1} \ I\ \overline{A_2} \ I\ K \ I\ \overline{A_8} \right| &= |S| - \sum_{i=1}^8 |A_i| + \sum_{i \neq j} |A_i \ I\ A_j| \\ &\quad - \sum_{i \neq j \neq k} |A_i \ I\ A_j \ I\ A_k| + L + (-1)^8 |A_1 \ I\ A_2 \ I\ K \ I\ A_8| \end{aligned} \quad 3.5$$

3.5

1.4

$$|S| = \frac{9!}{3!3!3!} = 1680$$

A_1 1 2 $\{3a, 3b, 3c\}$

aa bb cc aa
 bb cc 7 $abbbccc$ $\frac{7!}{3!3!1!}$

1 2

$$|A_1| = 3 \frac{7!}{3!3!1!}$$

A_2 2 3

aa 2 3 7 $abbbccc$

1 2 3 L 6

4 5 6 7 8 9

$$|A_2| = 3 \frac{7!}{3!3!1!}$$

$$|A_i| = 3 \frac{7!}{3!3!1!} \quad i=3\ 4\ L\ 8$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^8 |A_i| = 8 \times 3 \times \frac{7!}{3!3!1!} = 3360$$

$$\sum_{i \neq j} |A_i \ I\ A_j|$$

$$A_1 \text{ I } A_2$$

$$1 \quad 2$$

$$aa \quad bb \quad cc$$

$$aa$$

$$2 \quad 3$$

$$A_1 \text{ I } A_2$$

$$1 \quad 2 \quad 3$$

$$a$$

$$\{3b, 3c\}$$

$$\{3b, 3c\}$$

$$\frac{6!}{3!3!}$$

$$|A_1 \text{ I } A_2| = 3 \frac{6!}{3!3!}$$

$$A_i \text{ I } A_j \quad i \quad j$$

$$A_1 \text{ I } A_3$$

$$A_1 \text{ I } A_3$$

$$1$$

$$2$$

$$3 \quad 4$$

$$aa \quad bb \quad cc$$

$$2$$

$$P \quad 3 \quad 2 = 6$$

$$aa \quad bb$$

$$\{1a \quad 1b$$

$$3c\}$$

$$\{1a \quad 1b \quad 3c\}$$

$$\frac{5!}{3!}$$

$$|A_1 \text{ I } A_3| = 6 \times \frac{5!}{3!}$$

$$\sum_{i \neq j}^8 |A_i \text{ I } A_j| (j > i+1 \quad i=1 \quad 3 \quad L \quad 6)$$

$$i \quad j \quad 7-i$$

$$A_i \text{ I } A_j \quad i \quad j$$

$$6+5+4+L+1=21$$

$$\sum_{i \neq j}^8 |A_i \text{ I } A_j| = (1+2+L+6) \times 6 \times \frac{5!}{3!} = 21 \times 6 \times \frac{5!}{3!} \quad (j \neq i+1 \quad i=1 \quad 3 \quad L \quad 6)$$

$$\sum_{i \neq j}^8 |A_i \text{ I } A_j| = 7 \times 3 \times \frac{6!}{3!3!} + 21 \times 6 \times \frac{5!}{3!} = 420 + 2520 = 2940$$

$$\sum_{i \neq j \neq k}^8 |A_i \text{ I } A_j \text{ I } A_k| = 30 \times (3 \times 2 \times \frac{4!}{3!}) + 20 \times 3! \times 3! = 1440$$

$$\sum_{i \neq j \neq k \neq l}^8 |A_i \text{ I } A_j \text{ I } A_k \text{ I } A_l| = 10 \times (3 \times 2 \times \frac{3!}{3!}) + 30 \times (3! \times 2!) = 420$$

$$\sum_{i \neq j \neq k \neq l \neq m}^8 |A_i \text{ I } A_j \text{ I } A_k \text{ I } A_l \text{ I } A_m| = 12 \times (3! \times 1!) = 72$$

$$Q_n = D_n + D_{n-1}$$

• 48.

$$1 \leq a_1 < a_2 < \dots < a_{k-1} < a_k \leq n$$

$$1 \leq a_1 < a_2 - 1 < a_3 - 2 < \dots < a_k - (k-1) \leq n - (k-1)$$

$$\{a_1, a_2 - 1, \dots, a_k - k + 1\} \quad S' = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n - k + 1\} \quad k$$

$$\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k\} \quad \{a_1, a_2 - 1, \dots, a_k - k + 1\}$$

$$S = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\} \quad k \quad S' = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n - k + 1\}$$

$$k \quad \binom{n - k + 1}{k}$$

$$3.19 \quad b \quad n$$

$$k \quad \frac{n}{k} \binom{n - k + 1}{k - 1}$$

$$\text{证明:} \quad A \quad n - 3 \quad 1, 2, \dots, L$$

$$n - 3 \quad 1 \quad n - 3 \quad n - 3 \quad k - 1 \quad A$$

$$k \quad 3.19a$$

$$\binom{(n-3) - (k-1) + 1}{k-1} = \binom{n-k+1}{k-1}$$

$$n \quad n \quad n \binom{n-k+1}{k-1} \quad k$$

$$k \quad k \quad k \quad n \binom{n-k+1}{k-1} \quad k$$

$$k \quad \frac{n}{k} \binom{n-k+1}{k}$$

$$\text{注意本题也可以等价描述为:} \quad S = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$$

$$1, n, k \quad \frac{n}{k} \binom{n-k+1}{k}$$

$$3.20 \quad n(n \geq 3)$$

$$\text{解:} \quad n \quad 1.6 \quad n - 1$$

$$1, 2, 3, \dots, n$$

$$S \quad |S| = n!$$

R_1	1	1	L_1	1	1
R_2	2	2	L_2	2	2
.....					
R_n	n	n	L_n	n	n

注意,

$L_2 \quad R_2$

$R_3 \quad \dots\dots$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A_i & R_i & i=1 \quad 2 \quad \dots \quad n \\ A_{n+i} & L_i & i=1 \quad 2 \quad \dots \quad n \\ \overline{A_1} \text{ I } \overline{A_2} \text{ I } \dots \text{ I } \overline{A_{2n}} & & \end{array}$$

3.5

$$\begin{aligned} |\overline{A_1} \text{ I } \overline{A_2} \text{ I } \dots \text{ I } \overline{A_{2n}}| &= |S| - \sum_{i=1}^{2n} |A_i| + \sum_{i \neq j} |A_i \text{ I } A_j| \\ &\quad - \sum_{i \neq j \neq k} |A_i \text{ I } A_j \text{ I } A_k| + \dots + (-1)^{2n} |A_1 \text{ I } A_2 \text{ I } \dots \text{ I } A_{2n}| \end{aligned}$$

3.5

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccc} & & 2n & & 2n & & A_1 & A_{n+1} & A_2 & A_{n+2} & \dots & A_n & A_{2n} \\ A_{2n} & A_1 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & \dots & 2n-1 & 2n & & & 2n & 1 \end{array}$$

3.19b

$$S = \{1, 2, \dots, n, L, \dots, 2n\}$$

$$1 \quad 2n \quad k$$

k

$$\frac{2n}{k} \binom{2n-k-1}{k-1} = \frac{2n}{2n-k} \binom{2n-k}{k}$$

$k=1$

$n-1$

$n-1$

$$\sum_{i=1}^{2n} |A_i| = \frac{2n}{2n-1} \binom{2n-1}{1} \quad n-1$$

$$\sum_{i \neq j} |A_i \text{ I } A_j| = \frac{2n}{2n-2} \binom{2n-2}{2} \quad n-2$$

$L \quad L$

$$\sum_{i_1 \neq i_2 \neq \dots \neq i_k} |A_{i_1} \cap A_{i_2} \cap \dots \cap A_{i_k}| = \frac{2n}{2n-k} \binom{2n-k}{k} \quad n-k \quad k=1, 2, \dots, 2n$$

注意: $k=n+1, n+2, \dots, 2n$

$$\sum_{i_1 \neq i_2 \neq \dots \neq i_k} |A_{i_1} \cap A_{i_2} \cap \dots \cap A_{i_k}| = 0$$

$$k=n+1, n+2, \dots, 2n \quad \sum_{i_1 \neq i_2 \neq \dots \neq i_k} |A_{i_1} \cap A_{i_2} \cap \dots \cap A_{i_k}|$$

0 $n+1$

$$A_1 \cap A_2 \cap \dots \cap A_n \cap A_{n+1}$$

$$\begin{matrix} 1 & & 1 & & 1 \\ & 1 & & 1 & & 2 & & 2 \end{matrix}$$

3.5

$$|\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \dots \cap \overline{A_{2n}}| = \sum_{k=0}^{2n} (-1)^k \frac{2n}{2n-k} \binom{2n-k}{k} \quad n-k$$

$$(n-1)!$$

$$(n-1)! |\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \dots \cap \overline{A_{2n}}| = (n-1)! \sum_{k=0}^{2n} (-1)^k \frac{2n}{2n-k} \binom{2n-k}{k} (n-k)!$$

注意:

$$3.21 \quad n \quad n \quad 1, 2, 3, \dots, n$$

$$i \quad i$$

a

b m

解: § 3.3

$$e^{-1} \approx D_n/n! \quad n \quad D_n/n! \quad e^{-1} \quad D_n/n! \quad 1, 2, \dots, n$$

$$1, 2, \dots, n$$

$$e^{-1}$$

a

$$1 - D_n/n! \approx 1 - e^{-1}$$

b m

$$1, 2, \dots, n \quad m \quad \binom{n}{m}$$

$n-m$

$n-m$

D_{n-m}

$\binom{n}{m}D_{n-m} \approx \frac{n!}{m!}e^{-1}$

m

$\binom{n}{m}D_{n-m}/n! \approx \frac{e^{-1}}{m!}$

3.22

解:

3-1

3-1

C

3.11

(

第四章 母函数

一、内容提要

定义 4.1

$$(a_0, a_1, L, a_n, L) \quad \{a_n\}$$

$$f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + L + a_nx^n + L = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_i x^i \quad 4.1$$

$$(a_0, a_1, L, a_n, L)$$

定义 4.2

$$(a_0, a_1, L, a_n, L)$$

$$f_e(x) = a_0 + a_1 \frac{x^1}{1!} + a_2 \frac{x^2}{2!} + L + a_n \frac{x^n}{n!} + L = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \frac{x^n}{n!} \quad 4.2$$

$$(a_0, a_1, L, a_n, L)$$

定理 4.1

$$f(x) = f_e(x)$$

$$(a_0, a_1, L, a_n, L)$$

$$f(x) = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-sx} f_e(sx) ds$$

定义 4.3

$$A(x) = B(x) + C(x)$$

$$(a_0, a_1, L, a_r, L) \quad (b_0, b_1, L, b_r, L)$$

$$(c_0, c_1, L, c_r, L)$$

$$C(x) = A(x) + B(x)$$

i

$$c_i = a_i + b_i \quad (i=0, 1, 2, L, r, L)$$

定义 4.4

$$A(x) = B(x) + C(x)$$

$$(a_0, a_1, L, a_r, L) \quad (b_0, b_1, L, b_r, L)$$

$$(c_0, c_1, L, c_r, L)$$

$$C(x) = A(x) + B(x)$$

i

$$c_i = \sum_{k=0}^i a_k b_{i-k} \quad (i=0, 1, 2, L, r, L)$$

定义 4.5

$$A(x) = B(x) + C(x)$$

$$(a_0, a_1, L, a_r, L) \quad (b_0, b_1, L, b_r, L)$$

$$(c_0, c_1, L, c_r, L)$$

$$C(x) = A(x) + B(x)$$

i

$$c_i = a_i + b_i \quad (i=0, 1, 2, L, r, L)$$

定义 4.6

$$A(x) = B(x) + C(x)$$

$$(a_0, a_1, L, a_r, L) \quad (b_0, b_1, L, b_r, L)$$

$$(c_0, c_1, L, c_r, L)$$

$$C(x) = A(x) + B(x)$$

i

$$c_i = \sum_{k=0}^i \binom{i}{k} a_k b_{i-k} \quad (i=0, 1, 2, L, r, L)$$

注意:

$$(1+x)(1+x)L \quad (1+x) = (1+x)^n = \sum_{r=0}^n \binom{n}{r} x^r$$

$$x^r \quad \binom{n}{r} \quad 1+x^n$$

$$1+x$$

$$1+x+x^2+L \quad = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} \binom{n+r-1}{r} x^r$$

$$x^r \quad \binom{n+r-1}{r} = F \quad n \quad r \quad 1+x+x^2+L \quad n$$

$$1+x+x^2+x^3+L$$

$$L \quad L$$

$$1+x^n = \sum_{r=0}^n p(n, r) \frac{x^r}{r!}$$

$$\frac{x^r}{r!} \quad p \quad n \quad r \quad 1+x^n$$

$$1+x = 1+x^1/1$$

$$1+x+\frac{x^2}{2!}+L + \frac{x^r}{r!}+L = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} n^r \frac{x^r}{r!}$$

$$1+x+\frac{x^2}{2!}+L + \frac{x^r}{r!}+L \quad n \quad \frac{x^r}{r!} \quad n^r$$

$$1+x+\frac{x^2}{2!}+L + \frac{x^r}{r!}+L$$

$$L \quad r \quad L \quad L$$

$$\text{定理 4.2} \quad a \quad b \quad c \quad L \quad 0$$

				$\frac{1}{(1-x^a)(1-x^b)(1-x^c)\cdots}$				
	x^n		n	a	b	c	L	$P(n)$
定义 4.7								
1	$P_k(n)$	n	1	2	L	k		
2	$P_o(n)$	n						
3	$P_d(n)$	n						
4	$P_t(n)$	n	2		1	2	4	8
推论 1	$\{P_3(n)\}$				$\frac{1}{(1-x)(1-x^2)(1-x^3)}$			
推论 2	$\{P_k(n)\}$				$\frac{1}{(1-x)(1-x^2)\cdots(1-x^k)}$			
推论 3	$P(n)$				$\frac{1}{(1-x)(1-x^2)(1-x^3)\cdots}$			
推论 4	$\{P_o(n)\}$				$\frac{1}{(1-x)(1-x^3)(1-x^5)(1-x^7)\cdots}$			
定理 4.3	a	b	c	L	0			
					$(1+x^a)(1+x^b)(1+x^c)\cdots$			
	x^n		n	a	b	c	L	a
					b	c	L	
推论 1	$\{P_d(n)\}$							
				$1+x$	$1+x^2$	$1+x^3$	$1+x^4$	L
推论 2	$\{P_t(n)\}$							
				$1+x$	$1+x^2$	$1+x^4$	$1+x^8$	L
定理 4.4	(Euler)		n					
				$P_o(n)$	$=$	$P_d(n)$		
定理 4.5	(Sylvester		n					
				$P_t(n)$	$=$	1		
定理 4.6			n					
				$P(n)$	$<$	$e^{3\sqrt{n}}$		
定理 4.7	n	m			n		m	
定理 4.8	n		m				n	
	m							

二、习题解答

4.1

a $(1, -1, 1, L, (-1)^n, L)$

解: $(1, -1, 1, L, (-1)^n, L)$ $f(x)$ 4.1

$$f(x) = 1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + L + (-1)^n x^n + L$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} (-x)^i$$

$$= \frac{1}{1+x}$$

b $\left(\binom{c}{0} - \binom{c}{1} \binom{c}{2} L - 1^n \binom{c}{n} L \right) c$

解: $\left(\binom{c}{0} - \binom{c}{1} \binom{c}{2} L - 1^n \binom{c}{n} L \right) f(x)$ 4.1

$$f(x) = \binom{c}{0} - \binom{c}{1} x + \binom{c}{2} x^2 + L + (-1)^n \binom{c}{n} x^n + L$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} (-1)^i \binom{c}{i} x^i$$

$$= (1-x)^c$$

c $(c^0, c^1, c^2, L, c^n, L) c$

解: $(c^0, c^1, c^2, L, c^n, L) f(x)$ 4.1

$$f(x) = c^0 + cx + L + c^n x^n$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} c^i x^i$$

$$= \frac{1}{1-cx}$$

d $\left(\frac{1}{0!}, \frac{1}{1!}, \frac{1}{2!}, L, (-1)^n, L \right)$

解: $\left(\frac{1}{0!}, \frac{1}{1!}, \frac{1}{2!}, L, (-1)^n, L \right) f(x)$ 4.1

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x) &= \frac{1}{0!} - \frac{1}{1!}x + \frac{1}{2!}x^2 + L + (-1)^n \frac{1}{n!}x^n + L \\
 &= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} (-1)^i \frac{x^i}{i!} \\
 &= e^{-x}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$e \quad (a_0, a_1, a_2, L, a_n, L) \quad a_n = \binom{n}{2}$$

$$\text{解:} \quad (a_0, a_1, a_2, L, a_n, L) \quad f \quad x \quad 4.1$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x) &= a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + L + a_nx^n + L \\
 &= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_i x^i \quad \left(a_i = \binom{i}{2} \right) \\
 &= \frac{x^2}{(1-x)^3}
 \end{aligned}$$

4.2

$$a \quad (1!, 2!, 3!, L, n!, L)$$

$$\text{解:} \quad (1!, 2!, 3!, L, n!, L) \quad f_e(x) \quad 4.2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 f_e(x) &= 1! + 2! \frac{1}{1!}x + 3! \frac{1}{2!}x^2 + L + (n+1)! \frac{1}{n!}x^n + L \\
 &= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} (i+1)! \frac{x^i}{i!} \\
 &= \frac{1}{(1-x)^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$b \quad (0!, 1!, 2!, 3!, L, n!, L)$$

$$\text{解:} \quad (0!, 1!, 2!, 3!, L, n!, L) \quad f_e(x) \quad 4.2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 f_e(x) &= 0 + 1! \frac{x}{1!} + 2! \frac{x}{2!} + L + n! \frac{x}{n!} + L \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^k \\
 &= \frac{1}{1-x}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$c \quad (c_0, c_1, c_2, L, c_n, L) \quad (c_0 = 1, c_n = c(c-1)L, (c-n+1), n=1, 2, 3, L)$$

$$\text{解:} \quad (c_0, c_1, c_2, L, c_n, L) \quad f_e(x) \quad 4.2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 f_e(x) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n \frac{x^n}{n!} \\
 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{c(c-1)L(c-n+1)}{n!} x^n
 \end{aligned}$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \binom{c}{n} x^n$$

$$= 1+x^c$$

d $(1, 2, 2^2 \cdot 2!, 2^3 \cdot 3!, L, n!, L)$

解: $(c_0, c_1, c_2, L, c_n, L) \quad f_e(x) \quad 4.2$

$$f_e(x) = 2^0 + 2^1 \cdot 1! \frac{x}{1!} + 2^2 \cdot 2! \frac{x^2}{2!} + L + 2^n \cdot n! \frac{x^n}{n!} + L$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} 2^i x^i$$

$$= \frac{1}{1-2x}$$

4.3 $A(x), B(x) \quad (a_0, a_1, a_2, L, a_n, L) \quad (b_0, b_1, b_2, L, b_n, L)$

a $b_n = ka_n, k \quad B(x) = kA(x)$

b $b_n = \begin{cases} 0, & n < m \\ a_{n-m}, & n \geq m \end{cases} \quad B(x) = x^m A(x)$

c $b_n = a_{n+m} \quad B(x) = \frac{A(x) - \sum_{n=0}^{m-1} a_n x^n}{x^m}$

d $b_n = na_n \quad B(x) = xA'(x)$

证明:

a $B(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n x^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} ka_n x^n = k \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = kA(x)$

b $B(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n x^n = \sum_{n=0}^{m-1} b_n x^n + \sum_{n=m}^{\infty} b_n x^n = 0 + \sum_{n=m}^{\infty} a_{n-m} x^n = x^m \sum_{n=m}^{\infty} a_{n-m} x^{n-m}$

$$= x^m \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = x^m A(x)$$

c $B(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n x^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+m} x^n = \frac{1}{x^m} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+m} x^{n+m}$

$$= \frac{1}{x^m} \sum_{n=m}^{\infty} a_n x^n = \frac{1}{x^m} \left(\sum_{n=0}^{m-1} a_n x^n + \sum_{n=m}^{\infty} a_n x^n - \sum_{n=0}^{m-1} a_n x^n \right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{x^m} \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n - \sum_{n=0}^{m-1} a_n x^n \right)$$

$$= \frac{A(x) - \sum_{n=0}^{m-1} a_n x^n}{x^m}$$

d $B(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n x^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot n \cdot x^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} na_n x^n$

$$A(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n \quad A'(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} n a_n x^{n-1}$$

$$xA'(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} n a_n x^n$$

$$B(x) = xA'(x)$$

$$4.4 \quad (1, b, b^2, L, b^n, L) \quad \frac{1}{1-bx} \quad \frac{b^k x^k}{(1-bx)^{k+1}}$$

$$\text{解: } \ominus \frac{1}{1-bx} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b^n x^n$$

x

$$\frac{d}{dx} \left(\frac{1}{1-bx} \right) = \frac{b}{(1-bx)^2} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n b^n x^{n-1}$$

x

$$\frac{d^2}{dx^2} \left(\frac{1}{1-bx} \right) = \frac{2b^2}{(1-bx)^3} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} n(n-1) b^n x^{n-2}$$

$$\frac{d^3}{dx^3} \left(\frac{1}{1-bx} \right) = \frac{3 \cdot 2b^3}{(1-bx)^4} = \sum_{n=3}^{\infty} n(n-1)(n-2) b^n x^{n-3}$$

$L \quad L$

$$\frac{d^k}{dx^k} \left(\frac{1}{1-bx} \right) = \frac{k! 2b^k}{(1-bx)^{k+1}} = \sum_{n=k}^{\infty} n(n-1)(n-2)L(n-k+1) b^n x^{n-k}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{b^k}{(1-bx)^{k+1}} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{n!}{(n-k)!k!} b^n x^{n-k}$$

x^k

$$\frac{b^k x^k}{(1-bx)^{k+1}} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \binom{n}{k} b^n x^n$$

4.1

$$\left\{ \binom{n}{k} b^n \right\} \quad n=0, 1, L, \infty$$

4.5

解:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A & B & C & n & & A \\ n & & & A & a_n & \{ a_n \} \end{array}$$

$$f(x) = (1+x^2+x^4+L)(1+x+x^2+L)^2$$

$$= \frac{1}{1-x^2} \cdot \frac{1}{(1-x)^2}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{(1-x)^3} \cdot \frac{1}{(1+x)} \\
 &= \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{(1-x)^3} + \frac{\frac{1}{4}}{(1-x)^2} + \frac{\frac{1}{8}}{1-x} + \frac{\frac{1}{8}}{1+x}
 \end{aligned}$$

1.22

$$1 - (-rz)^{-n} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{n+k-1}{k} r^k z^k$$

x

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2} \binom{n+2}{2} + \frac{1}{4} (n+1) + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} (-1)^n \right) x^n \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{n+1}{4} x^{n+3} + \frac{1+(-1)^n}{8} x^n
 \end{aligned}$$

x^n

$$a_n = \frac{n+1}{4} x^{n+3} + \frac{1+(-1)^n}{8} x^n$$

4.6

$$B = \{\infty \cdot a, 3 \cdot b, 5 \cdot c, 7 \cdot d, \}$$

$$B_n = \{a_n\}$$

$$f(x) = (1+x+x^2+\dots)(1+x+x^2+x^3)(1+x+x^2+x^3+x^4+x^5)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\times (1+x+x^2+x^3+x^4+x^5+x^6+x^7) \\
 &= \frac{1}{1-x} \cdot \frac{1-x^4}{1-x} \cdot \frac{1-x^6}{1-x} \cdot \frac{1-x^8}{1-x} \\
 &= (1-x^4-x^6-x^8+x^{10}+x^{12}+x^{14}-x^{18}) \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{3+k}{3} x^k
 \end{aligned}$$

$$a_{10} = \binom{3+10}{3} - \binom{3+6}{3} - \binom{3+4}{3} - \binom{3+2}{3} + \binom{3+0}{3}$$

$$= 286 - 84 - 35 - 10 + 1 = 158$$

$$B_{10} = 158$$

注意:

$$4.7 \quad n \quad r$$

$$a_r \quad \{a_n\}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x) &= (x + x^3 + x^5 + L)^n \\
 &= x^n (1 + x^2 + x^4 + L)^n \\
 &= \frac{x^n}{(1 - x^2)^n} \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{n+k-1}{k} x^{2k+n} \quad 1.22 \\
 &= \sum_{r=n}^{\infty} \binom{n+\frac{r-n}{2}-1}{\frac{r-n}{2}} x^r \quad 2k+n=r \\
 &= \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} F\left(n, \frac{r-n}{2}\right) x^r
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore a_r = F\left(n, \frac{r-n}{2}\right)$$

$$a_r = F\left(n, \frac{r-n}{2}\right)$$

$$4.8 \quad n \quad r \quad 3$$

解: $a_r = \{a_r\}$ $n \quad r \quad 3$

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x) &= (x^3 + x^4 + x^5 + L)^n \\
 &= x^{3n} (1 + x + x^2 + L)^n \\
 &= x^{3n} (1 - x)^{-n} \\
 &= x^{3n} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{n+k-1}{k} x^k \quad 1.22 \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{n+k-1}{k} x^{k+3n} \\
 &= \sum_{k=3n}^{\infty} \binom{n+(k-3n)-1}{k-3n} x^k \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{n+(k-3n)-1}{k-3n} x^k \quad \sum_{k=0}^{3n-1} \binom{n+(k-3n)-1}{k-3n} x^k = 0 \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} F(n, k-3n) x^k
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore a_r = F(n, k-3n)$$

$$a_r = F(n, k-3n)$$

$$4.9 \quad B = \{\infty \cdot b_1, \infty \cdot b_2, \infty \cdot b_3, \infty \cdot b_4, \infty \cdot b_5, \infty \cdot b_6\} \quad a_r \quad B$$

$$r- \quad (a_0, a_1, L, a_r, L)$$

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc}
 a & & b_i & & 3 & & & i=1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\
 b & b_1 & b_2 & & & 1 & & b_3 & b_4 & & & 2 & & b_5 & b_6 & & 4 \\
 c & b_1 & & & & b_6 & & & & b_3 & & 3 & & & b_4 & & 5 \\
 d & & b_i & i & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & & & & & & & 8
 \end{array}$$

解:

$$\begin{aligned}
 a & \quad (a_0, a_1, L, a_r, L) \\
 & \quad f(x) = (1 + x^3 + x^6 + x^9 + L)^6 \\
 & \quad = \frac{1}{(1 - x^3)^6}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 b & \quad (a_0, a_1, L, a_r, L) \\
 & \quad f(x) = (1 + x)^2 (x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + L)^2 (1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4)^2 \\
 & \quad = (1 + x)^2 \frac{x^4}{(1 - x)^2} \frac{(1 - x^5)^2}{(1 - x)^2} \\
 & \quad = \frac{x^4 (1 - x^5)^2 (1 + x)^2}{(1 - x)^4}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 c & \quad (a_0, a_1, L, a_r, L) \\
 & \quad f(x) = (1 + x^2 + x^4 + L)(x + x^3 + x^5 + L)(1 + x^3 + x^6 + x^9 + L)(1 + x^5 + x^{10} + L) \\
 & \quad \quad \times (1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + L)^2 \\
 & \quad = \frac{1}{1 - x^2} \frac{x}{1 - x^2} \frac{1}{1 - x^3} \frac{1}{1 - x^5} \frac{1}{(1 - x)^2} \\
 & \quad = \frac{x}{(1 + x)^2 (1 - x^3)(1 - x^5)(1 - x)^4}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 d & \quad (a_0, a_1, L, a_r, L) \\
 & \quad f(x) = 1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + L + x^8 + x^6
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc}
 4.10 & & & & & & & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\
 r & & & & & & & & & & & &
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \quad a_r \\
 & \quad f(x) = (x + x^2 + L + x^6)^2
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc}
 & x^r & & a_r & & & & \\
 4.11 & & & & & & & 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & 7 \\
 r & & & & & & & a_r & & & (a_1, a_2, L, a_r, L)
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{解:} & \quad B = \{\infty \cdot 1, \infty \cdot 2, \infty \cdot 3, \infty \cdot 5, \infty \cdot 7\} \quad r- \\
 & \quad (a_1, a_2, L, a_r, L)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x) &= (1+x+x^2+L)(1+x^2+x^4+L)(1+x^3+x^6+L) \\
 &\quad \times (1+x^5+x^{10}+L)(1-x^7-x^{14}+L) \\
 &= \frac{1}{(1-x)(1-x^2)(1-x^3)(1-x^5)(1-x^7)}
 \end{aligned}$$

4.12

解:

 a_r

$$(a_1, a_2, L, a_r, L)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x) &= (1+x+x^2+L)(1+x^2+x^4+L)(1+x^3+x^6+L)(1+x^4+x^8+L) \\
 &= \frac{1}{(1-x)(1-x^2)(1-x^3)(1-x^4)} \\
 &\quad x \quad x^r \quad a_r
 \end{aligned}$$

4.13 $1 \times n$ 解: $A \quad B \quad C \quad D$

$$B = \{\infty \cdot A, \infty \cdot B, \infty \cdot C, \infty \cdot D\} \quad n-$$

 $A \quad D$ a_n $a_0=1$

$$(a_0, a_1, a_2, L, a_r, L)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 f_e(x) &= (1 + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + L)^2 (1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + L)^2 \\
 &= \frac{1}{2^2} (e^x + e^{-x})^2 e^{2x} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2^2} (e^{2x} + 2 + e^{-2x}) e^{2x} \\
 &= \frac{1}{4} (\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{4^n x^n}{n!} + 2 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{2^n x^n}{n!} + 1) \\
 &= \frac{1}{4} (\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (4^n + 2^{n+1}) \frac{x^n}{n!} + 1) \\
 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{4^n + 2^{n+1}}{4} \frac{x^n}{n!} + \frac{1}{4} \\
 &= 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (\frac{4^n + 2^{n+1}}{4}) \frac{x^n}{n!}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$a_n = \begin{cases} 4^n + 2^{n+1}, & n \geq 1 \\ 1, & n = 0 \end{cases}$$

4.14

2 3 4 5 6 7

 r

3 5

2 4

解: r a_r (a_1, a_2, L, a_r, L)

$$\begin{aligned} f_e(x) &= (1 + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \dots)^2 (1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots)^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2^2} e^x + e^{-x} \cdot 2 e^x - 1^2 e^{2x} \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} (6^r - 2 \cdot 5^r + 3 \cdot 4^r - 4 \cdot 3^r + 3 \cdot 2^r - 2) \frac{x^r}{r!} + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$a_r = \begin{cases} 0, & r=0 \\ \frac{1}{4}(6^r - 2 \cdot 5^r + 3 \cdot 4^r - 4 \cdot 3^r + 3 \cdot 2^r - 2), & r>0 \end{cases}$$

4.15 a_r $B = \{4 \cdot A, 1 \cdot B, 2 \cdot C, 1 \cdot D, 2 \cdot E, \}$ $r-$
 $(a_0, a_1, a_2, L, a_r, L)$

解: 4.2 $(a_0, a_1, a_2, L, a_r, L)$

$$f_e(x) = (1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{4!})(1 + x)(1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!})(1 + x)(1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!})$$

4.16 $B = \{\infty \cdot 1, \infty \cdot 2, \infty \cdot 3\}$ 0 r
 解: r a_r $(a_0, a_1, a_2, L, a_r, L)$

$$\begin{aligned} f_e(x) &= (1 + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + L)(1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + L)^3 \\ &= \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{2} e^{3x} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(e^{4x} + e^{2x}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (4^k + 2^k) \frac{x^k}{k!} \end{aligned}$$

$$a_r = \frac{1}{2}(4^r + 2^r)$$

$$B = \{\infty \cdot 1, \infty \cdot 2, \infty \cdot 3\} \quad 0 \quad r \quad \frac{1}{2}(4^r + 2^r)$$

4.17 4.3 4.8

$$\text{a. 定理 4.3} \quad \begin{matrix} a & b & c & L \\ x^n & & n & \end{matrix} \quad \begin{matrix} 0 \\ a & b & c & L \end{matrix} \quad \begin{matrix} 1+x^a & 1+x^b & 1+x^c & L \\ a & b & c & L \end{matrix}$$

$$\text{b. 定理 4.8} \quad \begin{matrix} n \\ m \end{matrix} \quad \begin{matrix} m \\ n \end{matrix}$$

证明:

$$\text{a.} \quad 4.2 \quad \frac{1}{(1-x^a)(1-x^b)(1-x^c)L} \quad x^n \quad n$$

$$\begin{matrix} a & b & c & L \\ P & n \end{matrix} \quad \frac{1}{(1-x^a)(1-x^b)(1-x^c)L} \quad \{P \quad n \quad \}$$

$$\frac{1}{(1-x^a)(1-x^b)(1-x^c)L} = (1+x^a+x^{2a}+L) (1+x^b+x^{2b}+L) (1+x^c+x^{2c}+L)$$

$$\begin{matrix} a & b & c & L \\ i \geq 2 & x^{ia} & x^{ib} & x^{ic} \end{matrix}$$

0

$$\frac{1}{(1-x^a)(1-x^b)(1-x^c)L} = \begin{matrix} 1+x^a & 1+x^b & 1+x^c & L \end{matrix}$$

$$\begin{matrix} 1+x^a & 1+x^b & 1+x^c & L \\ x^n & n & a & b \end{matrix}$$

$$\begin{matrix} c & L \\ a & b & c & L \end{matrix}$$

$$\text{b} \quad \begin{matrix} n \\ m \end{matrix} \quad \text{Ferrers} \quad 4-1$$

$$n=24=6+6+5+4+3 \quad 5 \quad 6 \quad 4-2$$

$$n=24=5+5+5+4+3+2 \quad 6 \quad 5 \quad \begin{matrix} m \\ n \end{matrix} \quad \begin{matrix} m \\ n \end{matrix}$$

$$\begin{matrix} m \\ n \end{matrix} \quad \begin{matrix} m \\ n \end{matrix} \quad \begin{matrix} m \\ n \end{matrix}$$

m

$$\begin{matrix} \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \end{matrix} \quad \begin{matrix} \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \end{matrix}$$

4-1

4-2

$$4.18 \quad \begin{matrix} n \\ m \end{matrix} \quad \begin{matrix} m \\ n \end{matrix} \quad n-m(m+1)/2$$

$$m \quad (n > m(m+1)/2)$$

$$\text{证明:} \quad n = a_1 + a_2 + L + a_m \quad a_1 > a_2 > L > a_m \geq 1$$

$$n - (1 + 2 + \cdots + m) = (a_1 - m) + (a_2 - (m - 1)) + \cdots + (a_m - 1)$$

$$n - m(m - 1) / 2 = (a_1 - m) + (a_2 - (m - 1)) + \cdots + (a_m - 1)$$

$$a_1 - m \geq a_2 - (m - 1) \geq \cdots \geq a_m - 1 \geq 0$$

$$n > \frac{m(m+1)}{2} \quad 0 \quad m \quad 0 \quad n - m(m+1)/2$$

m

4.19

a § 1.5 7

$$b \quad \sum_{i=0}^k \binom{n-i}{k-i} = \begin{cases} 0 & k = n+1 \\ \binom{n+1}{k} & 0 \leq k \leq n \end{cases}$$

$$c \quad \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{2n-2k}{n} \binom{n}{k} = 2^n$$

证明:

$$a \quad \S 4.1 \quad 1 \quad \left(\binom{n}{0}, \binom{n}{1}, \binom{n}{2}, \cdots, \binom{n}{n} \right)$$

$$f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k = (1+x)^n$$

$$\left(\binom{m}{0}, \binom{m}{1}, \binom{m}{2}, \cdots, \binom{m}{m} \right)$$

$$g(x) = \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} x^k = (1+x)^m$$

4.4

$$(1+x)^{m+n} \quad \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^p \binom{n}{k} \binom{m}{p-k} \right\}$$

$$(1+x)^{m+n} = \sum_{p=0}^{m+n} \sum_{k=0}^p \binom{n}{k} \binom{m}{p-k} x^p$$

1.13

$$(1+x)^{m+n} = \sum_{p=0}^{m+n} \binom{m+n}{p} x^p$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^p \binom{n}{k} \binom{m}{p-k} = \binom{m+n}{p}$$

$$b \quad 1.4.2 \quad \left(\binom{n}{0}, \binom{n}{1}, \binom{n}{2}, \dots, \binom{n}{n} \right)$$

$$(1+x)^n$$

$$(1+x)^n = \binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{1}x + \binom{n}{2}x^2 + \dots + \binom{n}{k}x^k + \dots + \binom{n}{n}x^n$$

$$(1+x)^{n-1} = \binom{n-1}{0} + \binom{n-1}{1}x + \binom{n-1}{2}x^2 + \dots + \binom{n-1}{k-1}x^{k-1} + \dots + \binom{n-1}{n-1}x^{n-1}$$

$$x^2(1+x)^{n-2} = \binom{n-2}{0}x^2 + \binom{n-2}{1}x^3 + \dots + \binom{n-2}{k-2}x^{k-1} + \dots + \binom{n-2}{n-2}x^n$$

$$N$$

$$x^k(1+x)^{n-k} = \binom{n-k}{0}x^k + \binom{n-k}{1}x^{k+1} + \dots + \binom{n-k}{n-k}x^n$$

$$x^k \sum_{i=0}^k \binom{n-i}{k-i}$$

$$f(x) = (1+x)^n + x(1+x)^{n-1} + x^2(1+x)^{n-2} + \dots + x^k(1+x)^{n-k}$$

$$= x^n \left[\left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^n + \left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^{n-1} + \left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^{n-2} + \dots + \left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^{n-k} \right]$$

$$g(x) = f(x) + x^n \left[\left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^{n-k-1} + \left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^{n-k-2} + \dots + \left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^0 \right]$$

$$g(x) = x^n \left[\left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^n + \left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^{n-1} + \left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^{n-2} + \dots + \left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^{n-k} + \right.$$

$$\left. \left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^{n-k-1} + \left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^{n-k-2} + \dots + \left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^0 \right]$$

$$= x^n \left[\frac{1 - \left(\frac{1+x}{x} \right)^{n+1}}{1 - \frac{1+x}{x}} \right]$$

$$= (1+x)^{n+1} - x^{n+1}$$

$$x^k \quad g(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n g_k x^k \quad f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n f_k x^k \quad g(x)$$

$$\begin{cases} \binom{n+1}{k} & 0 \leq k \leq n \\ 0 & k = n+1 \end{cases}$$

$$\sum_{i=0}^k \binom{n-i}{k-i} = \begin{cases} \binom{n+1}{k} & 0 \leq k \leq n \\ 0 & k = n+1 \end{cases}$$

c. 1.7 1.12

$$\left[(1+x)^2 - 1 \right]^n = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} (1+x)^{2(n-k)} = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} \left[\sum_{i=0}^{2(n-k)} \binom{2n-2k}{i} x^i \right]$$

$$X = -1 \quad Y = 1 + x^2 \quad 1.12 \quad 1.13$$

$$x^n \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} \binom{2n-2k}{n}$$

$$(1+2x+x^2-1)^n = (2x+x^2)^n = x^n (2+x)^n = x^n \sum_{i=0}^n \binom{n}{i} x^i \cdot 2^{n-i}$$

$$x^n \cdot 2^n \quad x^n \sum_{i=0}^n \binom{n}{i} 2^{n-i} \cdot x^i \quad x^n \quad i=0$$

$$\binom{n}{0} \cdot 2^{n-0} = 2^n$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{2n-2k}{n} \binom{n}{k} = 2^n$$

$$4.20 \quad n \quad k$$

$$\text{a} \quad \binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{2} + \binom{n}{4} + \cdots + \binom{n}{q} \quad n \quad q=n \quad n \quad q=n-1$$

$$\text{b} \quad \binom{2n}{0} - \binom{2n-1}{1} + \binom{2n-2}{2} - \cdots + (-1)^n \binom{n}{n}$$

$$\text{c} \quad \binom{n}{0} \binom{n}{k} - \binom{n}{1} \binom{n-1}{k-1} + \binom{n}{2} \binom{n-2}{k-2} - \cdots + (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} \binom{n-k}{0}$$

$$\text{d} \quad \binom{n}{0} + 2 \binom{n}{1} + 2^2 \binom{n}{2} + \cdots + 2^n \binom{n}{n}$$

解:

$$\text{a} \quad \Theta \quad (1+x)^n = \binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{1}x + \binom{n}{2}x^2 + \cdots + \binom{n}{n}x^n$$

$$(1-x)^n = \binom{n}{0} - \binom{n}{1}x + \binom{n}{2}x^2 - \cdots + (-1)^n \binom{n}{n}x^n$$

$$\frac{(1+x)^n + (1-x)^n}{2} = \binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{2}x^2 + \cdots + \binom{n}{q}x^q$$

$$q = \begin{cases} n & n \\ n-1 & n \end{cases}$$

$$\left. \frac{(1+x)^n + (1-x)^n}{2} \right|_{x=1} = \binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{2} + \cdots + \binom{n}{q} = \begin{cases} 2^{n-1} & n > 0 \\ 1 & n = 0 \end{cases}$$

b.

1.4.2

$$\left(\binom{n}{0}, \binom{n}{1}, \binom{n}{2}, \cdots, \binom{n}{n} \right)$$

$$1+x \quad (1+x)^n = \binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{1}x + \binom{n}{2}x^2 + \cdots + \binom{n}{n}x^n$$

$$x^{2n}(1-x)^{2n} = \binom{2n}{0}x^{2n} - \binom{2n}{1}x^{2n+1} + \binom{2n}{2}x^{2n+2} - \cdots + \binom{2n}{2n}x^{4n}$$

$$x^{2n-1}(1-x)^{2n-1} = \binom{2n-1}{0}x^{2n-1} - \binom{2n-1}{1}x^{2n} + \binom{2n-1}{2}x^{2n+1} - \cdots - \binom{2n-1}{2n-1}x^{4n-2}$$

$$x^{2n-2}(1-x)^{2n-2} = \binom{2n-2}{0}x^{2n-2} - \binom{2n-2}{1}x^{2n-1} + \binom{2n-2}{2}x^{2n} - \cdots + \binom{2n-2}{2n-2}x^{4n-4}$$

N

$$x^n(1-x)^n = \binom{n}{0}x^n - \binom{n}{1}x^{n+1} + \binom{n}{2}x^{n+2} - \cdots + (-1)^n \binom{n}{n}x^{2n}$$

$$x^{2n}$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{2n-k}{k}$$

$$A(x) = x^{2n}(1-x)^{2n} + x^{2n-1}(1-x)^{2n-1} + x^{2n-2}(1-x)^{2n-2} + \cdots + x^n(1-x)^n$$

$$A(x) = x^{2n} + a_{2n} \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{2n-k}{k} = a_{2n}$$

$$a_{2n}$$

$$A(x) \quad x^{2n} \quad B(x)$$

$$B(x) = A(x) + x^{n-1}(1-x)^{n-1} + x^{n-2}(1-x)^{n-2} + \cdots + x^0(1-x)^0$$

$$= \frac{1 - [x(1-x)]^{2n+1}}{1-x(1-x)} = \frac{1 - [x(1-x)]^{2n+1}}{1-x+x^2} \cdot \frac{1+x}{1+x}$$

$$= \{1 - [x(1-x)]^{2n+1}\} \cdot \frac{1+x}{1+x^3}$$

$$= \{1 - [x(1-x)]^{2n+1}\} \cdot (1+x)(1-x^3+x^6-x^9+\cdots + (-1)^k x^{3k} + \cdots)$$

$$B(x) = A(x) + x^{2n} \quad a_{2n} = \begin{cases} 1, & 2n \equiv 0 \pmod{3} \\ -1, & 2n \equiv 1 \pmod{3} \\ 0, & 2n \equiv 2 \pmod{3} \end{cases}$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{2n-k}{k} = \begin{cases} 1, & 2n \equiv 0 \pmod{3} \\ -1, & 2n \equiv 1 \pmod{3} \\ 0, & 2n \equiv 2 \pmod{3} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{c} \quad \sum_{i=0}^k (-1)^i \binom{n}{i} \binom{n-i}{k-i} &= \sum_{i=0}^k (-1)^i \frac{n!}{i!(n-i)!} \frac{(n-i)!}{(n-k)!(k-i)!} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^k (-1)^i \frac{n!}{(n-k)!(k-i)!i!} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^k (-1)^i \frac{n!}{(n-k)!k!} \cdot \frac{k!}{(k-i)!i!} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^k (-1)^i \binom{n}{k} \binom{k}{i} = \binom{n}{k} \sum_{i=0}^k (-1)^i \binom{k}{i} \\ &= \binom{n}{k} (1-x)^k \Big|_{x=1} \\ &= \begin{cases} 1, & k=0 \\ 0, & k>0 \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

$$d \quad \Theta \quad (1+2x)^n = \binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{1}2x + \binom{n}{2}(2x)^2 + L + \binom{n}{n}(2x)^n$$

$$x=1$$

$$3^n = \binom{n}{0} + 2\binom{n}{1} + 2^2\binom{n}{2} + L + 2^n\binom{n}{n}$$

$$\binom{n}{0} + 2\binom{n}{1} + 2^2\binom{n}{2} + L + 2^n\binom{n}{n} = 3^n$$

第五章 递归关系

一、内容提要

- 定义 5.1 (a_0, a_1, L, a_r, L) a_r
 $a_i (0 \leq i < r)$
1. 常系数线性齐次递归关系的解法
- 5.3 5.5
 定义 5.2 (a_0, a_1, L, a_n, L) $k+1$
 $a_n = b_1 a_{n-1} + b_2 a_{n-2} + L + b_k a_{n-k} \quad (n \geq k)$ 5.12
 (a_0, a_1, L, a_n, L) k $b_i (i = 1, 2, L, k)$
 $b_k \neq 0$
- 定义 5.3 5.12
 $x^k - b_1 x^{k-1} - b_2 x^{k-2} - L - b_k = 0$ 5.13
 5.12 5.13 5.12
- 定理 5.1 $q \neq 0, a_n = q^n$ 5.12 q 5.13
- 定义 5.4 5.12
 $a_0 = h_0, a_1 = h_1, L, a_{k-1} = h_{k-1}$ 5.14
 5.14 5.12
- 定理 5.2 q_1, q_2, L, q_k 5.12 c_1, c_2, L, c_k
 $a_n = c_1 q_1^n + c_2 q_2^n + L + c_k q_k^n$ 5.15
 5.12
- 定义 5.5 a_n 5.12
 c_1, c_2, L, c_k a_n 5.15 5.15 5.12

定理 5.3 q_1, q_2, L, q_k 5.12

$$a_n = c_1 q_1^n + c_2 q_2^n + L + c_k q_k^n$$

5.12

定理 5.4 5.12 5.13

$$x^k - b_1 x^{k-1} - b_2 x^{k-2} - L - b_k = 0$$

m q $q^n, nq^n, L, nm^{-1}q^n$ 5.12

定理 5.5 q_1, q_2, L, q_i 5.13 m_1, m_2, L, m_i

$$\sum_{i=1}^t m_i = k$$

$$a_n = \sum_{i=1}^t \sum_{j=1}^{m_i} c_{ij} n^{j-1} q_i^n \quad 5.17$$

5.12

定义 5.6 (a_0, a_1, L, a_n, L) $k+1$

$$a_n = b_1 a_{n-1} + b_2 a_{n-2} + L + b_k a_{n-k} + f(n) \quad 5.18$$

(a_0, a_1, L, a_n, L) k $b_i (i=1, 2, L, k)$

$b_k \neq 0, f(n) \neq 0, n \geq k$

定义 5.7 5.18 $f(n) = 0$

$$a_n = b_1 a_{n-1} + b_2 a_{n-2} + L + b_k a_{n-k} \quad 5.19$$

5.18

定理 5.6 $\overline{a_n}$ 5.18 $a_n^* = \sum_{i=1}^k c_i q_i^n$ $\sum_{i=1}^t \sum_{j=1}^{m_i} c_{ij} n^{j-1} q_i^n$ 5.18

5.19

$$a_n = \overline{a_n} + a_n^*$$

5.18

2. 常系数线性非齐次递归关系的解法

5.6

5.18

5.19

5.18

$$f(n)$$

$$1 \quad f(n) = n^k$$

$$a \quad 1 \quad 5.18$$

$$5.19 \quad 5.18$$

$$\overline{a_n} = A_0 n^k + A_1 n^{k-1} + L + A_k \quad 5.20$$

$$A_0, A_1, L, A_k$$

$$b \quad 1 \quad 5.18$$

$$5.19 \quad m \quad (m \geq 1)$$

$$\overline{a_n} = (A_0 n^k + A_1 n^{k-1} + L + A_k n^m) \quad 5.21$$

$$A_0, A_1, L, A_k$$

$$2 \quad f(n) = \beta^n$$

$$\beta \quad 5.18 \quad 5.19$$

$$\overline{a_n} = A \cdot \beta^n \quad 5.22$$

$$A$$

$$c \quad \beta \quad 5.18$$

$$5.19 \quad k \quad (k \geq 1)$$

$$\overline{a_n} = (A_0 n^k + A_1 n^{k-1} + L + A_k) \beta^n \quad 5.23$$

3. 迭代法与归纳法求解递归关系

迭代法

归纳法

4. 用母函数法求解递归关系的方法

$$f(x)$$

$$a_0, a_1, L, a_n, L$$

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n \quad 5.29$$

$$a_n$$

$$5.29$$

$$5.29$$

$$f(x)$$

$$a_n$$

$$5.29$$

$$g \quad f \quad x \quad =0 \quad 5.30$$

$$5.30 \quad f \quad x$$

$$f \quad x \quad a_n$$

Stirling

$$\text{定义 5.8} \quad [x]_n = x(x-1)(x-2)\cdots(x-n+1)$$

$$[x]_n = \sum_{k=0}^n S_1(n, k)x^k \quad 5.32$$

$$S_1(n, k) \quad \text{Stirling} \quad S_1(n, k) \quad [x]_n \quad x^k$$

$$n < k \quad S_1(n, k) = 0$$

定理 5.7 Stirling

$$\begin{cases} S_1(n+1, k) = S_1(n, k-1) - nS_1(n, k) & (n \geq 0, k > 0) \\ S_1(0, 0) = 1, S_1(n, 0) = 0 & (n > 0) \end{cases} \quad 5.33$$

定义 5.9

$$x^n = \sum_{k=0}^n S_2(n, k)[x]_k \quad 5.34$$

$$S_2(n, k) \quad \text{Stirling} \quad n < k \quad S_2(n, k) = 0$$

定理 5.8 Stirling

$$\begin{cases} S_2(n+1, k) = S_2(n, k-1) + kS_2(n, k) & (n \geq 0, k > 0) \\ S_2(0, 0) = 1, S_2(n, 0) = 0 & (n > 0) \end{cases} \quad 5.35$$

$$\text{定理 5.9} \quad \text{Stirling} \quad S_2(n, k) \quad n \quad k$$

定理 5.10 Stirling $S_2(n, k)$

$$1 \quad S_2(n, n) = 1$$

$$S_2(n, k) = 0 \quad n < k \quad k=0 < n$$

$$2 \quad S_2(n, 2) = 2^{n-1} - 1$$

$$3 \quad S_2(n, n-1) = \binom{n}{2}$$

定义 5.10

$$B_n = \sum_{k=0}^n S_2(n, k) \quad 5.36$$

$$B_n \quad \text{Bell} \quad B_0 = 1$$

定理 5.11 Bell B_n

$$B_{n+1} = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} B_k$$

二、习题解答

$$5.1 \quad 1 \times n \quad a_n$$

$$a_n$$

$$\text{解: } a_n \quad 1 \times n$$

$$1 \quad n-1$$

$$a_{n-1}$$

$$2 \quad n-2$$

$$a_{n-2}$$

$$a_1=2 \quad a_2=3$$

$$\begin{cases} a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} (n \geq 3) \\ a_1 = 2, a_2 = 3 \end{cases}$$

$$2$$

$$x^2 - x - 1 = 0$$

$$q_1 = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2} \quad q_2 = \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}$$

$$5.3 \quad a_n = c_1 q_1^n + c_2 q_2^n$$

$$a_1 = 2 \quad a_2 = 3$$

$$\begin{cases} c_1 \times \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2} + c_2 \times \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2} = 2 \\ c_1 \times \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^2 + c_2 \times \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^2 = 3 \end{cases}$$

$$c_1 = \frac{5+3\sqrt{5}}{10} \quad c_2 = \frac{5-3\sqrt{5}}{10}$$

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{5+3\sqrt{5}}{10} \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n + \frac{5-3\sqrt{5}}{10} \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left[\left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n+2} - \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n+2} \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$5.2 \quad a_n \quad 0 \quad n \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 2$$

$$a_n$$

$$\text{解: } n$$

$$1 \quad 1 \quad n-1 \quad 0 \quad a_{n-1}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} 2 & 2 & n-1 & 0 & a_{n-1} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} 3 & 0 & & & \\ & 1 & n-2 & 0 & a_{n-2} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & 2 & n-2 & 0 & a_{n-2} \end{array}$$

$$a_1=3 \quad a_2=8$$

$$a_n$$

$$\begin{cases} a_n = 2a_{n-1} + 2a_{n-2} & (n \geq 3) \\ a_1 = 3, a_2 = 8 \end{cases}$$

$$x^2-2x-2=0$$

$$x_1=1+\sqrt{3} \quad x_2=1-\sqrt{3}$$

5.3

$$a_n=c_1 \cdot (1+\sqrt{3})^n + c_2 \cdot (1-\sqrt{3})^n$$

$$\begin{cases} c_1(1+\sqrt{3}) + c_2(1-\sqrt{3}) = 3 \\ c_1(1+\sqrt{3})^2 + c_2(1-\sqrt{3})^2 = 8 \end{cases}$$

$$c_1 = \frac{3+2\sqrt{3}}{6} \quad c_2 = \frac{3-2\sqrt{3}}{6}$$

$$a_n = \frac{1}{6} \left[(3+2\sqrt{3})(1+\sqrt{3})^n + (3-2\sqrt{3})(1-\sqrt{3})^n \right]$$

5.3

$$n$$

解:

$$F_n$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & & n-1 & n-1 & F_{n-1} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} 2 & & n-2 & n-2 & F_{n-2} \end{array}$$

$$F_1=1 \quad F_2=2$$

$$F_n$$

$$\begin{cases} F_n = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} & (n \geq 3) \\ F_1 = 1, F_2 = 2 \end{cases}$$

2

$$F(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} F_n x^n \quad F_1 \quad F_2 \quad \dots \quad F_n \quad \dots \quad F \quad x$$

$$\begin{aligned} F(x) &= F_1 x + F_2 x^2 + \sum_{n=3}^{\infty} (F_{n-1} + F_{n-2}) x^n \\ &= x + 2x^2 + x \sum_{n=3}^{\infty} F_{n-1} x^{n-1} + x^2 \sum_{n=3}^{\infty} F_{n-2} x^{n-2} \\ &= x + 2x^2 + x \left(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} F_n x^n - F_1 x \right) + x^2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} F_n x^n \\ &= x + 2x^2 + xF(x) - x^2 + x^2 \cdot F(x) \end{aligned}$$

$$F(x) = \frac{x+x^2}{1-x-x^2} = [1/(1-x-x^2)] - 1$$

$$1-x-x^2=0 \quad (2)$$

$$x_1 = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}, x_2 = \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}$$

$$F(x) = \left(\frac{A}{1-x_1 x} + \frac{B}{1-x_2 x} \right) - 1$$

$$A = \frac{x_1}{\sqrt{5}} \quad B = \frac{-x_2}{\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\begin{aligned} F(x) &= \left(\frac{x_1}{\sqrt{5}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_1^n x^n - \frac{x_2}{\sqrt{5}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_2^n x^n \right) - 1 \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{x_1^{n+1}}{\sqrt{5}} - \frac{x_2^{n+1}}{\sqrt{5}} \right) x^n - 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$F_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} (x_1^{n+1} - x_2^{n+1})$$

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 \quad x_2 \\ F_n &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \times \frac{(1+\sqrt{5})^{n+1} - (1-\sqrt{5})^{n+1}}{2^{n+1}} \quad n \geq 1 \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} &\times \frac{(1+\sqrt{5})^{n+1} - (1-\sqrt{5})^{n+1}}{2^{n+1}} \end{aligned}$$

5.4

n

n ?

解:

n

a_n

1

$n-1$

a_{n-1}

2

$n-2$

a_{n-2}

3

$n-2$

a_{n-2}

$$a_1=1 \quad a_2=3$$

$$\begin{cases} a_n = a_{n-1} + 2a_{n-2} (n \geq 3) \\ a_1 = 1, a_2 = 3 \end{cases}$$

$$x^2 - x - 2 = 0$$

$$x_1 = -1, x_2 = 2$$

$$a_n = c_1(-1)^n + c_2 2^n$$

$$\begin{cases} c_1 \times (-1) + c_2 \times 2 = 1 \\ c_1 \times (-1)^2 + c_2 \times 2^2 = 3 \end{cases}$$

$$c_1 = \frac{1}{3}, c_2 = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$a_n = \frac{1}{3}(-1)^n + 2^n \times \frac{2}{3}$$

$$\frac{1}{3}(-1)^n + 2^n \times \frac{2}{3}$$

n

5.5

$$\text{a } \begin{cases} a_n = 3a_{n-1} & (n \geq 1) \\ a_0 = 3 \end{cases}$$

解:

$$a_n = 3a_{n-1} = 3^2 a_{n-2} = 3^3 a_{n-3} = \dots = 3^n a_0 = 3^{n+1}$$

$$\text{b} \quad \begin{cases} a_n = 4a_{n-2} & (n \geq 2) \\ a_0 = 0, a_1 = 1 \end{cases}$$

解: $n \qquad n=2k+1$

$$a_n = a_{2k+1} = 4 \cdot a_{2k-1} = 4^2 \cdot a_{2k-3} = \dots = 4^i \cdot a_{2k-(2i-1)} = \dots = 4^i \cdot a_1$$

$$2k - (2i - 1) = 1$$

$$i = k \quad k = \frac{n-1}{2}$$

$$a_n = 4^{\frac{n-1}{2}} \times a_1 = 2^{n-1}$$

$$n \qquad n=2k$$

$$a_n = a_{2k} = 4 \cdot a_{2k-2} = 4^2 \cdot a_{2k-4} = \dots = 4^i \cdot a_{2k-(2i)} = \dots = 4^i \cdot a_0$$

$$2k - 2i = 0$$

$$i = k$$

$$a_n = 4^{\frac{n}{2}} \cdot a_0 = 0$$

$$a_n = \begin{cases} 0 & , \quad n \\ 2^{n-1} & , \quad n \end{cases}$$

$$\text{c} \quad \begin{cases} a_n = 4a_{n-1} - 4a_{n-2} & (n \geq 2) \\ a_0 = 1, a_1 = 4 \end{cases}$$

解:

$$x^2 - 4x + 4 = 0$$

$$x_1 = x_2 = 2$$

$$a_n = (c_1 + c_2 n) 2^n$$

$$\begin{cases} (c_1 + c_2 \times 0) \times 1 = 1 \\ (c_1 + c_2) \times 2^1 = 4 \end{cases}$$

$$c_1 = 1, c_2 = 1$$

$$\text{d} \quad \begin{cases} a_n = (1+n)2^n \\ a_n = -a_{n-1} + 16a_{n-2} - 20a_{n-3} \quad (n \geq 3) \\ a_0 = 0, a_1 = 1, a_2 = -1 \end{cases}$$

解:

$$q^3 + q^2 - 16q + 20 = 0$$

$$q_1 = q_2 = 2, q_3 = -5$$

$$a_n = (c_1 + c_2 n)2^n + c_3(-5)^n$$

$$\begin{cases} c_1 + c_3 = 0 \\ (c_1 + c_2) \times 2 - 5c_3 = 1 \\ (c_1 + 2c_2) \times 4 + 25c_3 = -1 \end{cases}$$

$$c_1 = \frac{5}{49}, c_2 = \frac{7}{49} = \frac{1}{7}, c_3 = -\frac{5}{49}$$

$$a_n = \left(\frac{5}{49} + \frac{1}{7}n\right) \times 2^n - \frac{5}{49} \times (-5)^n$$

$$\text{e} \quad \begin{cases} a_{n+2} = 7a_{n+1} - 12a_n \quad (n \geq 2) \\ a_0 = 2, a_1 = 7 \end{cases}$$

解:

$$q^2 - 7q + 12 = 0$$

$$q_1 = 3, q_2 = 4$$

$$a_n = c_1 3^n + c_2 4^n$$

$$\begin{cases} c_1 + c_2 = 2 \\ 3c_1 + 4c_2 = 7 \end{cases}$$

$$c_1 = c_2 = 1$$

$$a_n = 3^n + 4^n$$

$$f \quad \begin{cases} a_n = 3a_{n-2} - 2a_{n-3} & (n \geq 3) \\ a_0 = 1, a_1 = 0, a_2 = 0 \end{cases}$$

解:

$$x^3 - 3x + 2 = 0$$

$$x_1=1 \quad x_2=1 \quad x_3=-2$$

$$a_n = (c_1 + c_2 n)1^n + c_3(-2)^n$$

$$\begin{cases} c_1 + c_3 = 1 \\ c_1 + c_2 - 2c_3 = 0 \\ c_1 + 2c_2 + 4c_3 = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$c_1 = \frac{8}{9} \quad c_2 = -\frac{6}{9} \quad c_3 = \frac{1}{9}$$

$$a_n = \frac{8}{9} - \frac{6}{9}n + \frac{1}{9}(-2)^n$$

5.6

$$a \quad \begin{cases} a_n = -6a_{n-1} - 9a_{n-2} + 3 & (n \geq 2) \\ a_0 = 0, a_1 = 1 \end{cases}$$

解:

$$a_n^* = -6a_{n-1}^* - 9a_{n-2}^*$$

$$x^2 + 6x + 9 = 0$$

$$q_1 = q_2 = -3$$

5.3

$$a_n^* = (c_1 + c_2 n) \cdot (-3)^n$$

$$f \quad n = 3 \quad 1$$

$$\overline{a_n} = A$$

$$\overline{a_n} = A$$

$$A = -6A - 9A + 3$$

$$A = \frac{3}{16}$$

$$5.6 \quad a_n = \bar{a} + a^* = \frac{3}{16} + (c_1 + c_2 n) (-3)^n$$

$$\begin{cases} c_1 = -\frac{3}{16} \\ c_2 = -\frac{1}{12} \end{cases}$$

$$a_n = \frac{3}{16} + \left(-\frac{3}{16} - \frac{1}{12}n \right) (-3)^n$$

$$\text{b} \quad \begin{cases} a_n = -5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2} + 3n^2 & (n \geq 2) \\ a_0 = 0, a_1 = 1 \end{cases}$$

解:

$$x^2 + 5x + 6 = 0$$

$$x_1 = -2, x_2 = -3$$

5.3

$$a_n^* = c_1 (-2)^n + c_2 (-3)^n$$

$$f \quad n = 3n^2 \quad 1$$

$$\overline{a_n} = A_0 n^2 + A_1 n + A_2$$

$$A_0 = \frac{1}{4}, A_1 = \frac{17}{24}, A_2 = \frac{115}{288}$$

$$a_n = a_n^* + \overline{a_n} = c_1 (-2)^n + c_2 (-3)^n + \frac{1}{4}n^2 + \frac{17}{24}n + \frac{115}{288}$$

$$\begin{cases} c_1 + c_2 + \frac{115}{288} = 0 \\ -2c_1 - 3c_2 + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{17}{24} + \frac{115}{288} = 1 \end{cases}$$

$$c_1 = \frac{-14}{9}, c_2 = \frac{37}{32}$$

$$a_n = a_n^* + \overline{a_n} = \frac{-14}{9}(-2)^n + \frac{37}{32}(-3)^n + \frac{1}{4}n^2 + \frac{17}{24}n + \frac{115}{288}$$

$$c \quad \begin{cases} a_n = 7a_{n-1} - 10a_{n-2} + 3^n & (n \geq 2) \\ a_0 = 0, a_1 = 1 \end{cases}$$

解:

$$x^2 - 7x + 10 = 0$$

$$x_1 = 5 \quad x_2 = 2$$

$$a_n^* = 5^n c_1 + 2^n c_2$$

$$f \quad n \quad = 3^n \quad 3$$

$$\overline{a_n} = A \times 3^n \quad \overline{a_n} = A \times 3^n$$

$$A \times 3^n = 7A \times 3^{n-1} - 10A \times 3^{n-2} + 3^n$$

$$A = -\frac{9}{2}$$

$$a_n = a_n^* + \overline{a_n} = 5^n c_1 + 2^n c_2 - \frac{9}{2} 3^n$$

$$\begin{cases} c_1 + c_2 - \frac{9}{2} = 0 \\ 5c_1 + 2c_2 - \frac{9}{2} \times 3 = 1 \end{cases}$$

$$c_1 = 11/6 \quad c_2 = 8/3$$

$$a_n = \frac{11}{6} 5^n + \frac{8}{3} 2^n - \frac{9}{2} 3^n$$

$$d \quad \begin{cases} a_n = -5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2} + 42 \times 4^n & (n \geq 2) \\ a_0 = 0 \quad a_1 = 1 \end{cases}$$

解:

$$x^2+5x+6=0$$

$$x_1=-2 \quad x_2=-3$$

$$a_n^* = c_1(-2)^n + c_2(-3)^n$$

$$f(n) = 42 \times 4^n - 4$$

$$\overline{a_n} = A \times 4^n$$

$$\overline{a_n} = A \times 4^n$$

$$A4^n+5A4^{n-1}+6A4^{n-2}=42 \times 4^n$$

$$A=16$$

$$a_n=a^*+\overline{a_n}=c_1(-2)^n+c_2(-3)^n+16 \times 4^n$$

$$\begin{cases} c_1+c_2+16=0 \\ -2c_1-3c_2+64=1 \end{cases}$$

$$c_1=-111 \quad c_2=95$$

$$a_n=-111 \times (-2)^n+95 \times (-3)^n+16 \times 4^n$$

$$\text{e} \quad \begin{cases} a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2} + 3 \times 2^n & (n \geq 2) \\ a_0 = 0, a_1 = 1 \end{cases}$$

解:

$$x^2-5x+6=0$$

$$x_1=2 \quad x_2=3$$

$$a_n^* = c_1 2^n + c_2 3^n$$

$$f(n) = 3 \times 2^n - 2$$

$$1$$

$$\overline{a_n} = (A_n + B)2^n$$

$$A=-6$$

$$a_n=a^*+\bar{a}_n=c_12^n+c_23^n-6n\times 2^n$$

$$\begin{cases} c_1+c_2=0 \\ 2c_1+3c_2-12=1 \end{cases}$$

$$c_1=-13 \quad c_2=13$$

$$a_n=-13\times 2^n+13\times 3^n-6n\times 2^n$$

$$5.7 \quad \S 5.1 \quad \text{Fibonacci} \quad 5.6 \quad 5.7 \quad 5.8 \quad 5.9$$

证明:

$$1 \quad \sum_{i=0}^n F_i = F_{n+2} - 1 \quad 5.6$$

$$\begin{aligned} F_{n+2} &= F_{n+1} + F_n = F_n + F_{n-1} + F_n \\ &= F_n + F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} + L + F_1 + F_0 + F_1 \end{aligned}$$

$$F_n + F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} + L + F_0 = \sum_{i=0}^n F_i = F_{n+2} - F_1 = F_{n+2} - 1$$

$$2 \quad \sum_{i=1}^n F_{2i-1} = F_{2n} - 1 \quad 5.7$$

$$\begin{aligned} F_{2n} &= F_{2n-1} + F_{2n-2} \\ &= F_{2n-1} + F_{2n-3} + F_{2n-4} \\ &= F_{2n-1} + F_{2n-3} + F_{2n-5} + L + F_1 + F_0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n F_{2i-1} = F_{2n} - 1$$

$$3 \quad \sum_{i=0}^n F_i^2 = F_n \cdot F_{n+1} \quad 5.8$$

$$\begin{aligned} F_{n+1} &= F_n + F_{n-1} \\ F_n \cdot F_{n+1} &= F_n (F_n + F_{n-1}) = F_n^2 + F_n \cdot F_{n-1} \\ &= F_n^2 + F_{n-1}^2 + L + F_1^2 + F_1 \cdot F_0 \\ &= F_n^2 + F_{n-1}^2 + L + F_1^2 + F_0^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\sum_{i=0}^n F_i^2 = F_n \cdot F_{n+1}$$

$$4 \quad F_{n+1} \cdot F_{n-1} - F_n^2 = (-1)^{n+1} \quad 5.9$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 F_n &= ((1+\sqrt{5})^{n+1} - (1-\sqrt{5})^{n+1}) / (2^{n+1} \cdot \sqrt{5}) \\
 F_{n+1} \cdot F_{n-1} - F_n^2 &= \{[(1+\sqrt{5})^{n+2} - (1-\sqrt{5})^{n+2}] / (2^{n+2} \cdot \sqrt{5})\} \{[(1+\sqrt{5})^n - (1-\sqrt{5})^n] / (2^n \cdot \sqrt{5})\} \\
 &\quad - \{[(1+\sqrt{5})^{n+1} - (1-\sqrt{5})^{n+1}] / (2^{n+1} \cdot \sqrt{5})\}^2 \\
 &= \frac{1}{5 \times 2^{2n+2}} [(1+\sqrt{5})^{n+2} - (1-\sqrt{5})^{n+2}] [(1+\sqrt{5})^n - (1-\sqrt{5})^n] \\
 &\quad - \frac{1}{5 \times 2^{2n+2}} [(1+\sqrt{5})^{n+1} - (1-\sqrt{5})^{n+1}]^2 \\
 &= (-1)^{n+1}
 \end{aligned}$$

5.8

a
$$\begin{cases} a_n = (n+2)a_{n-1} & (n \geq 1) \\ a_0 = 2 \end{cases}$$

$$a_0=2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_1 &= 1+2 & a_0 &= 2 \times 3 = 1+2 \\
 a_2 &= 2+2 & a_1 &= 2 \times 3 \times 4 = 2+2 \\
 a_3 &= 3+2 & a_2 &= 2 \times 3 \times 4 \times 5 = 3+2
 \end{aligned}$$

$$a_n = n+2 \quad !$$

$$a_n = n+2 \quad !$$

$$n=1 \quad 2 \quad 3$$

$$n=k$$

$$a_k = k+2 \quad !$$

$$n=k+1$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_{k+1} &= k+1+2 & a_k \\
 &= k+1+2 & k+2 \quad ! \\
 &= k+1+2 & !
 \end{aligned}$$

b
$$\begin{cases} a_n = ca_{n-1} + b & n=k+1 \\ a_0 = b & b \quad c \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_n &= ca_{n-1} + b = c \quad ca_{n-2} + b + b \\
 &= c^2 + cb + b
 \end{aligned}$$

$$=c^3 a_{n-3} + c^2 b + cb + b$$

L L

$$=c^n a_0 + c^{n-1} b + L + cb + b$$

$$=b \cdot c^n + c^{n-1} + L + c^1 + c^0$$

$$= \begin{cases} \frac{b(c^{n+1}-1)}{(c-1)} & c \neq 1 \\ (n+1)b & c = 1 \end{cases}$$

$$a_n = \begin{cases} \frac{b(c^{n+1}-1)}{(c-1)} & c \neq 1 \\ (n+1)b & c = 1 \end{cases}$$

$$c \quad \begin{cases} a_n = a_{n-1} - n + 3 & (n \geq 1) \\ a_0 = 2 \end{cases}$$

解:

$$a_n = a_{n-1} - n + 3$$

$$= a_{n-2} - (n-1) + 3 - n + 3$$

$$= a_{n-2} - 2n + 3 + 4$$

$$= a_{n-3} - 3n + 3 + 4 + 5$$

$$= a_{n-4} - 4n + 3 + 4 + 5 + 6$$

L L

$$= a_1 - (n-1)n + 3 + 4 + 5 + L + (n+1)$$

$$= a_0 - n^2 + 3 + 4 + L + (n+1) + (n+2)$$

$$= -n^2 + 5n + 4 \quad /2$$

$$a_n = -n^2 + 5n + 4 \quad /2$$

5.9

$$a \quad \begin{cases} a_n = a_{n-1} + n & (n \geq 1) \\ a_0 = 1 \end{cases}$$

$$\text{解:} \quad f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n \quad \{a_n\}$$

$$f(x) = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n x^n$$

$$= 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_{n-1} + n) \cdot x^n$$

$$= 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{n-1} \cdot x^n + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n \cdot x^n$$

$$= 1 + x \cdot \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} n \cdot x^n$$

$$= 1 + x \cdot f(x) + \frac{x}{(1-x)^2}$$

$$f(x) = \frac{x^2 - x + 1}{(1-x)^3}$$

$$(1-x)^{-3} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{3+k-1}{k} x^k = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{k+2}{2} x^k$$

$$f(x) = (x^2 - x + 1) \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{k+2}{2} x^k$$

$$a_n = \binom{n}{2} - \binom{n+1}{2} + \binom{n+2}{2} = \frac{n^2 + n + 2}{2}$$

$$\text{b} \quad \begin{cases} a_n = a_{n-1} + \frac{n(n+1)}{2} & (n \geq 1) \\ a_0 = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\text{解:} \quad f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n \quad \{a_0 \quad a_1 \quad \text{L} \quad a_n \quad \text{L} \}$$

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[a_{n-1} + \frac{1}{2} n(n+1) \right] x^n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{n-1} x^n + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n(n+1) x^n$$

$$= x \cdot \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n(n+1) x^n = x \cdot f(x) + \frac{x}{(1-x)^3}$$

$$\therefore \quad f(x) = \frac{\frac{x}{(1-x)^3}}{1-x} = \frac{x}{(1-x)^4} = x \cdot \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \binom{4+n-1}{3} \cdot x^n$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \binom{4+n-1}{3} \cdot x^{n+1} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \binom{n+2}{3} \cdot x^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \binom{n+2}{3} \cdot x^n$$

$$a_n = \binom{n+2}{3} = \frac{1}{6} (n^3 + 3n^2 + 2n)$$

$$\text{c} \quad \begin{cases} a_n = a_{n-1} + 2^{n-1} & (n \geq 1) \\ a_0 = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\text{解:} \quad f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n \quad \{a_0 \quad a_1 \quad \text{L} \quad a_n \quad \text{L} \}$$

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n x^n$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_{n-1} + 2^{n-1}) x^n$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{n-1} x^n + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 2^{n-1} x^n$$

$$= x \cdot f(x) + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (2x)^n - \frac{1}{2}$$

$$= x \cdot f(x) + \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{1-2x} - \frac{1}{2}$$

$$f(x) = \frac{\frac{x}{1-2x}}{1-x} = \frac{x}{(1-2x)(1-x)} = \frac{1}{1-2x} - \frac{1}{1-x} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (2x)^n - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x^n$$

$$a_n = 2^n - 1$$

$$d \quad \begin{cases} a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2} & (n \geq 2) \\ a_0 = 1, \quad a_1 = -2 \end{cases}$$

$$\text{解: } f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n \quad \{a_0 \quad a_1 \quad \dots \quad a_n \quad \dots\}$$

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$$

$$= 1 - 2x + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_n x^n = 1 - 2x + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} (5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2}) \cdot x^n$$

$$= 1 - 2x + 5 \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_{n-1} x^n - 6 \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_{n-2} x^n = 1 - 2x + 5x \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n x^n - 6x^2 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$$

$$= 1 - 2x + 5x(f(x) - 1) - 6x^2 \cdot f(x)$$

$$f(x) = \frac{1-7x}{1-5x+6x^2} = \frac{1-7x}{(2x-1)(3x-1)}$$

$$= -\frac{5}{2x-1} + \frac{4}{3x-1} = \frac{5}{1-2x} - \frac{4}{1-3x}$$

$$= 5 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (2x)^n - 4 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (3x)^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (5 \cdot 2^n - 4 \cdot 3^n) x^n$$

$$a_n = 5 \cdot 2^n - 4 \cdot 3^n \quad n=0 \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad \dots$$

$$5.10 \quad a_n \quad n$$

$$n$$

$$1 \quad n \quad 3$$

$$a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} + a_{n-3} + \dots + a_{n-6}$$

$$\text{证明: } 5-1 \quad n$$

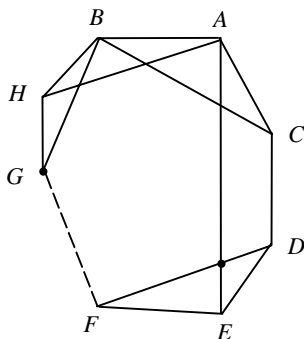
$$ABC$$

$$AB \quad AC \quad A \quad n-1$$

$$a_{n-1}$$

$$A \quad n-3 \quad ABC \quad n-2$$

$$A \quad n-1 \quad AB \quad AC \quad BC$$



5-1

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 n-1 & & & A & & D & E & F \\
 E & & AE & D & F & DF & & AE \\
 & & & & & n-1 & &
 \end{array}$$

$$\binom{n-1}{3}$$

A

$n-1$

$n-1$

2

$$\binom{n-1}{3}$$

$$a_n = a_{n-1} + \binom{n-1}{3} + n - 2 = a_{n-1} + \binom{n-1}{3} + n - 2 \quad (n \geq 3)$$

$$2 \quad a_0 = a_1 = a_2 = 0 \quad a_0 \quad a_1 \quad a_2 \quad L \quad a_n \quad L$$

a_n

$$\{a_n\}$$

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n \quad 1$$

$$-xf'(x) = -x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} n a_n x^{n-1} = - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n a_n x^n \quad 2$$

$$1 - 2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (1-x)f'(x) &= \sum_{n=3}^{\infty} (a_n - a_{n-1}) x^n \\
 &= \sum_{n=3}^{\infty} \left(\binom{n-1}{3} + n - 2 \right) x^n \quad 1
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x) &= \frac{1}{1-x} \sum_{n=3}^{\infty} \left(\binom{n-1}{3} + n - 2 \right) x^n \\
 &= \binom{3}{3} x^4 + \binom{4}{3} x^5 + \cdots + \binom{n-1}{3} x^n + \cdots \\
 &\quad + x^3 + 2x^4 + 3x^5 + \cdots + nx^{n+2} + \cdots
 \end{aligned}$$

1.23

$$\binom{0}{k} + \binom{1}{k} + \binom{2}{k} + \cdots + \binom{n-1}{k} = \binom{n}{k+1}$$

$$k=3 \quad f(x) = x^n$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_n &= \binom{n-2}{3} + \binom{n-3}{3} + \cdots + 1 + \left(\binom{n-1}{3} + \binom{n-2}{3} + \cdots + \binom{3}{3} \right) \\
 &= \frac{(n-1)(n-2)}{2} + \binom{n}{4}
 \end{aligned}$$

5.11

n

a_n

$$a_n = \binom{n}{4} + \binom{n}{2} + 1$$

证明:

2

n

n

5.10

2

n

$$b_n = \frac{(n-1)(n-2)}{2} + \binom{n}{4}$$

$$a_n = \frac{(n-1)(n-2)}{2} + \binom{n}{4} + n$$

$$= \frac{n(n-1)}{2} + \binom{n}{4} + 1$$

$$= \binom{n}{2} + \binom{n}{4} + 1$$

5.12

1

l

a_l

$$a_l = \begin{cases} (l+1)^2 / 4 & l \\ (l+1)^2 / 4 & l \end{cases}$$

证明:

$$a \quad b \quad c \quad a \geq b \geq c$$

$$l \quad l=2n \quad a=l=2n \quad b \quad 2n \quad 2n-1$$

L $n+1$

$$b=2n \quad c \quad 2n \quad 2n-1 \quad L \quad 2 \quad 1 \quad 2n$$

$$b=2n-1 \quad c \quad 2n-1 \quad 2n-2 \quad L \quad 2 \quad 2n-2$$

... ..

$$b=n+2 \quad c \quad n+2 \quad n+1 \quad n \quad n-1 \quad 4$$

$$b=n+1 \quad c \quad n+1 \quad n$$

$$l=2n$$

$$2n+ \quad 2n-2 \quad + \quad 2n-4 \quad +L \quad +4+2=n \quad n+1 \\ = \frac{l(l+2)}{4}$$

$$l \quad l=2n+1 \quad a=l=2n+1 \quad b \quad 2n+1$$

2n L $n+1$

$$b=2n+1 \quad c \quad 2n+1 \quad 2n \quad L \quad 2 \quad 1 \quad 2n+1$$

$$b=2n \quad c \quad 2n \quad 2n-1 \quad L \quad 2 \quad 2n-1$$

.....

$$b=n+2 \quad c \quad n+2 \quad n+1 \quad n \quad 3$$

$$b=n+1 \quad c \quad n+1 \quad 1$$

$$l=2n+1$$

$$2n+1 \quad + \quad 2n-1 \quad + \quad 2n-3 \quad +L \quad +3+1= \quad 2n+2 \quad ^2/4 \\ = \frac{(l+1)^2}{4}$$

$$a_l = \begin{cases} (l+1)^2 / 4 & l \\ (l+2)l / 4 & l \end{cases}$$

$$2 \quad a_n \quad 2n \quad b_n \quad 2n+1$$

$$a_n \quad b_n$$

$$\text{解: } a_n \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad L \quad 2n-1 \quad 2n \quad 1$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_n &= \frac{(1+1)^2}{4} + \frac{(2+2) \times 2}{4} + \frac{(3+1)^2}{4} + \frac{(4+2)^2 \times 4}{4} \text{L} + \frac{(2n-1+1)^2}{4} + \frac{(2n+2) \times 2n}{4} \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{(2k-1+1)^2}{4} + \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{(2k+2) \times 2k}{4} \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n k^2 + \sum_{k=1}^n k(k+1) \\
 &= 2 \sum_{k=1}^n k^2 + \sum_{k=1}^n k \\
 &= \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{3} + \frac{n(n+1)}{2} \\
 &= \frac{n(n+1)(4n+5)}{6}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$a_n = \frac{n(n+1)(4n+5)}{6}$$

$$b_n \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad 2n-1 \quad 2n \quad 2n+1$$

$$1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad 2n-1 \quad 2n \quad a_n$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 b_n &= a_n + \frac{(2n+1+1)^2}{4} \\
 &= \frac{n(n+1)(4n+5)}{6} + \frac{(2n+1+1)^2}{4} \\
 &= \frac{(n+1)(4n^2+11n+6)}{6}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$b_n = \frac{(n+1)(4n^2+11n+6)}{6}$$

5.13 Stirling $S_2 \quad n \quad k$

$$1 \quad S_2 \quad n \quad 2 = 2^{n-1} - 1$$

证明:

方法一:

$$S_2(n+1, k) = S_2(n, k-1) + kS_2(n, k)$$

$$S_2(n, 2) = S_2(n-1, 1) + 2S_2(n-1, 2) = 1 + 2 + 2^2 S_2(n-2, 2)$$

$$= 1 + 2 + 2^2 S_2(n-3, 1) + 2^3 S_2(n-3, 2)$$

$$= 1 + 2 + 2^2 + 2^3 S_2(n-4, 1) + 2^4 S_2(n-4, 2)$$

L L

$$= 1 + 2 + 2^2 + 2^3 + \text{L} + 2^{n-2}$$

$$= \frac{1-2^{n-1}}{1-2} = 2^{n-1} - 1$$

方法二:

$$S_2(n, 2) = \sum_{a_1=1}^n \sum_{a_2=1}^{n-1} \dots \sum_{a_{n-1}=1}^2 a_1 a_2 \dots a_{n-1} = 2^{n-1} - 1$$

$$2 S_2(n, n-1) = \binom{n}{2}$$

$$S_2(n, n-1) = \sum_{n=2}^n \sum_{n-2}^{n-1} \dots \sum_{n-1}^1 1 = \binom{n}{2}$$

$$S_2(n, n-1) = \binom{n}{2}$$

5.14 Stirling

$$\sum_{x=1}^m x^n = \sum_{k=0}^n k! S_2(n, k) \binom{m+1}{k+1}$$

证明: n

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{x}{k} k! S_2(n, k) = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{x}{k} k! S_2(n, k) = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{x}{k} k! S_2(n, k)$$

$$x^n = \sum_{k=1}^x k! S_2(n, k) \binom{x}{k}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{x=1}^m x^n &= \sum_{x=1}^m \sum_{k=1}^x k! S_2(n, k) \binom{x}{k} \\ &= \sum_{x=1}^m \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k! S_2(n, k) \binom{x}{k} \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \sum_{x=1}^m k! S_2(n, k) \binom{x}{k} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (k! S_2(n, k)) \sum_{x=1}^m \binom{x}{k} \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k! S_2(n, k) \binom{m+1}{k+1} \quad 1.33 \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n k! S_2(n, k) \binom{m+1}{k+1} \quad \Theta \quad k > n \quad S_2(n, k) = 0 \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^n k! S_2(n, k) \binom{m+1}{k+1}
 \end{aligned}$$

5.15

$$1 \quad 1^3 + 2^3 + \dots + 100^3$$

解 5.14

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sum_{x=1}^{100} x^3 &= \sum_{k=0}^3 k! S_2(3, k) \binom{100+1}{k+1} \\
 &= \binom{101}{2} + 2! S_2(3, 2) \binom{101}{3} + 3! S_2(3, 3) \binom{101}{4} \\
 &= \binom{101}{2} + 6 \times \binom{101}{3} + 6 \times \binom{101}{4}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$2 \quad 1^4 + 2^4 + \dots + 100^4$$

解 5.14

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sum_{x=1}^{100} x^4 &= \sum_{k=0}^4 k! S_2(4, k) \binom{100+1}{k+1} \\
 &= \binom{101}{2} + 2! S_2(4, 2) \binom{101}{3} + 3! S_2(4, 3) \binom{101}{4} + 4! S_2(4, 4) \binom{101}{5} \\
 &= \binom{101}{2} + 14 \times \binom{101}{3} + 36 \times \binom{101}{4} + 24 \times \binom{101}{5}
 \end{aligned}$$

5.16

§ 5.6

5.11

证明

$n+1$

$\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{n+1}\}$

B_{n+1}

$n+1$

a_1

k

$k=1, 2, \dots, n+1$

$k-1$

n

a_2

a_3, \dots, a_{n+1}

$$\binom{n}{n-1}$$

$n+1-k$

B_{n-k+1}

$$\binom{n}{k-1} B_{n-k+1}$$

$$k=1 \quad 2 \quad \dots \quad n+1$$

$$\begin{aligned} B_{n+1} &= \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} \binom{n}{n-1} B_{n-k+1} \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} \binom{n}{n-k+1} B_{n-k+1} \\ &= \binom{n}{n} B_n + \binom{n}{n-1} B_{n-1} + \binom{n}{n-2} B_{n-2} + \dots + \binom{n}{0} B_0 \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} B_k \end{aligned}$$

第六章 Pólya 定理

一、内容提要

定义 6.1

G 是群

$$1 \quad \forall a, b \in G \quad a \circ b \in G$$

$$2 \quad \forall a, b, c \in G \quad (a \circ b) \circ c = a \circ (b \circ c)$$

$$3 \quad e \in G \quad \forall a \in G \quad e \circ a = a \circ e = a$$

$$4 \quad \forall a \in G \quad \exists b \in G \quad a \circ b = b \circ a = e$$

$$b \circ a = a^{-1} \circ b = a^{-1}$$

$$\langle G, \circ \rangle \quad \langle G, \circ \rangle \quad G$$

$$\langle G, \circ \rangle \quad \circ \quad a \circ b \in G \quad a \circ b \quad ab \quad G$$

$$G \quad |G| \quad G \quad a \circ b \in G$$

$$ab=ba \quad G \quad \text{Abel}$$

定理 6.1 G 是群

$$1 \quad e^{-1} = e$$

$$2 \quad G$$

$$3 \quad \forall a, b, c \in G \quad ab=ac \quad ba=ca \quad b=c$$

$$4 \quad \forall a, b \in G \quad (ab)^{-1} = b^{-1}a^{-1}$$

定义 6.2 G 是群

$$1 \quad a^0 = e$$

$$2 \quad a^n = a^{n-1}a$$

$$3 \quad a^{-n} = (a^{-1})^n$$

定理 6.2 G 是群

$$a \in G \quad m, n \in \mathbb{Z} \quad a^m a^n = a^{m+n} \quad (a^m)^n = a^{mn}$$

定义 6.3 $\langle G, \circ \rangle$ 是群

$$\langle H, \circ \rangle \quad \langle G, \circ \rangle$$

定理 6.3 G 是群

$$1 \quad \forall a, b \in H \quad ab \in H$$

$$2 \quad \forall a \in H \quad a^{-1} \in H$$

$$\text{定理 6.4} \quad G \quad H \subseteq G \quad H \neq \emptyset \quad a, b \in H \quad ab \in H$$

$$H \quad G$$

$$\text{定义 6.4} \quad A \quad \sigma \quad A$$

$$\text{定理 6.5} \quad S_n \quad n \quad A$$

$$1 \quad |S_n| = n!$$

$$2 \quad \forall \sigma, \tau, \alpha \in S_n \quad (\sigma\tau)\alpha = \sigma(\tau\alpha)$$

$$3 \quad I\sigma = \sigma I = \sigma \quad \forall \sigma \in S_n$$

$$4 \quad \forall \sigma \in S_n \quad \sigma^{-1}\sigma = \sigma\sigma^{-1} = I$$

$$\text{定理 6.6} \quad S_n \quad n \quad A \quad \cdot \quad \langle S_n, g \rangle$$

$$\text{定义 6.5} \quad \sigma \quad A \quad A \quad k \quad a_1 \quad a_2 \quad \dots \quad a_k \quad \sigma \quad a_1 = a_2$$

$$\sigma(a_2) = a_3 \quad \dots \quad \sigma(a_{k-1}) = a_k \quad \sigma(a_1) = a_1 \quad A \quad x \quad \sigma(x) = x \quad \sigma$$

$$\text{定理 6.7}$$

$$\text{定义 6.6} \quad 2$$

$$\text{定理 6.8}$$

$$\text{推论 6.1}$$

$$\text{定义 6.7}$$

$$\text{定理 6.9} \quad A_n \quad n \quad A \quad n-1 \quad A_n$$

$$\frac{n!}{2} \quad S_n \quad n$$

$$\text{定理 6.10} \quad n \quad S_n$$

$$\left| \left[(1)^{c_1} (2)^{c_2} \dots (n)^{c_n} \right] \right| = \frac{n}{c_1! c_2! \dots c_n! 1^{c_1} 2^{c_2} \dots n^{c_n}}$$

$$\text{定义 6.8} \quad R \quad \forall \langle a, b \rangle \in R$$

$$a \quad b \in A \quad R \quad A$$

$$\text{定义 6.9} \quad R \quad A$$

$$1 \quad \forall x \in A \quad \langle x, x \rangle \in R \quad R$$

$$2 \quad \forall x, y \in A \quad \langle x, y \rangle \in R \quad \langle y, x \rangle \in R \quad R$$

$$3 \quad \forall x, y, z \in A \quad \langle x, y \rangle, \langle y, z \rangle \in R \quad \langle x, z \rangle \in R \quad R$$

$$4 \quad A \quad A$$

定义 6.10 R A $a \in A$
 $[a] = \{x \mid x \in A \text{ 且 } \langle a, x \rangle \in R\}$

a R a a
 定理 6.11 R A $\forall a, b \in A$

- 1 $[a] \neq \emptyset$
- 2 $a \in [b] \Leftrightarrow [a] = [b]$ $a \notin [b] \Leftrightarrow [a] \cap [b] = \emptyset$
- 3 $\bigcup_{x \in A} [x] = A$

定理 6.12 G M R M

定理 6.13 G M $a \in M$ G_a G a

定理 6.14 G M $\forall a \in M$ $|G| = |[a]| \cdot |G_a|$

定理 6.15 Burnside G M t G M

$$t = \frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{\tau \in G} c_1(\tau)$$

$c_1(\tau)$ 1-
 定理 6.16 N n $G = \{\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_k\}$ N m
 n

$$t = \frac{1}{|G|} [m^{c(\sigma_1)} + m^{c(\sigma_2)} + \dots + m^{c(\sigma_k)}]$$

$c(\sigma_i)$ σ_i

二、习题解答

6.1

Z

a. Z O a b Z $aOb=5$

b. O

c. $a > 0$ a 1 $A = a^n$ n Z

d. $G = a + b\sqrt{2}$ a b Z

e. $G = -1$ 0 1

解: a Z

b

$$c \quad a^0 = 1 \quad (a^n)^{-1} = a^{-n} \quad (-n \in \mathbb{Z})$$

$$d \quad 0 \quad (a + b\sqrt{2})^{-1} = -a - b\sqrt{2}$$

$$2 \quad 2 = 2 + 0 \cdot \sqrt{2}$$

$$e \quad 1 + 1 = 2 \notin G$$

$$0$$

$$6.2 \quad \mathbb{Z} \quad \mathbb{Z} \quad o \quad a \circ b = a + b - 1 \quad \mathbb{Z} \quad o$$

证明: $\forall a, b \in \mathbb{Z} \quad a \circ b = a + b - 1 \in \mathbb{Z}$

$$\begin{aligned} \forall a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z} \quad (a \circ b) \circ c &= (a + b - 1) \circ c \\ &= (a + b - 1 + c - 1) = (a + b + c - 1 - 1) \\ &= a \circ (b \circ c) \end{aligned}$$

$$\forall a \in \mathbb{Z} \quad \exists e = 1 \quad a \circ e = e \circ a = (a + e - 1) = (a + 1 - 1) = a$$

$$\forall a \in \mathbb{Z} \quad \exists b = -a + 2 \in \mathbb{Z} \quad a \circ b = b \circ a = (a - a + 2 - 1) = 1 = e$$

$$a^{-1} = -a + 2$$

$$6.1 \quad \langle \mathbb{Z}, o \rangle$$

$$6.3 \quad G \quad o \quad a \in G \quad m, n \quad a^m a^n = a^{m+n} \quad a^m a^{-n} = a^{m-n}$$

证明:

$$\text{情况 1: } m, n \quad 0 \quad n=0$$

$$a^m \circ a^0 = a^m \circ e = a^m = a^{m+0}$$

e

$$(a^m)^0 = e = a^{m \times 0}$$

情况 2: m, n

$$a^m \circ a^n = \underbrace{a \circ a \circ \cdots \circ a}_m \circ a \circ \cdots \circ a_n = a \circ a \circ \cdots \circ a = a^{m+n}$$

$$(a^m)^n = a^m \circ a^m \circ \cdots \circ a^m = a^{mn}$$

$$\text{情况 3 } m, n \quad 0 \quad m < 0 \quad a^m = (a^{-1})^{-m} \quad 3$$

2

6.4 G Abel $a b G$ n $ab^n = a^n b^n$

证明: n

$$n=1 \quad (ab)^1 = ab = a^1 b^1$$

$$n=k \quad k \geq 1 \quad (ab)^k = a^k b^k$$

$$n=k+1$$

$$\begin{aligned} (ab)^{k+1} &= (ab)^k (ab) = (a^k b^k)(ab) \\ &= a^k (b^k a) b = a^k (ab^k) b = (a^k a)(b^k b) = a^{k+1} b^{k+1} \end{aligned}$$

$$\forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+ \quad (ab)^n = a^n b^n$$

6.5 m $H = \{mk \mid k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ $H +$ $\mathbb{Z} +$

证明: $H \subseteq \mathbb{Z}$

$$0 = m \times 0 \in H$$

$$H \neq \emptyset$$

$$\forall mk_1, mk_2 \in H \quad (k_1, k_2 \in \mathbb{Z})$$

$$(mk_1 + mk_2) = m(k_1 + k_2) \in H$$

$$\forall mk \in H \quad (k \in \mathbb{Z})$$

$$(mk)^{-1} = -(mk) = m(-k) \in H$$

$$\langle H, + \rangle \subseteq \langle \mathbb{Z}, + \rangle$$

6.6 $H \cap K \subseteq G$ $H \cap K \subseteq G$ $H \cap K \subseteq G$

证明: $e \in G$ $H \cap K \subseteq G$ $e \in H$ $e \in K$ $e \in H \cap K$

$$H \cap K \neq \emptyset \quad H \cap K \subseteq G$$

$$\forall a, b \in H \cap K \quad a, b \in H \quad a, b \in K$$

$$H \cap K \quad ab \in H \quad ab \in K \quad ab \in H \cap K$$

$$\forall x \in H \cap K \quad x \in H \quad x \in K$$

$$H \cap K \quad x^{-1} \in H \quad x^{-1} \in K \quad x^{-1} \in H \cap K$$

$$H \cap K \subseteq G$$

$$H \cup K \subseteq G \quad H = K \quad H \cup K = H \cup K \subseteq G$$

$$H = \{2k \mid k \in \mathbb{Z}\} \quad K = \{3k \mid k \in \mathbb{Z}\} \quad H \cap K \subseteq \langle \mathbb{Z}, + \rangle \quad H \cup K \subseteq \langle \mathbb{Z}, + \rangle$$

$$\langle \mathbb{Z}, + \rangle$$

$$6.7 \quad = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 3 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 2 & 1 & 7 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 7 & 6 & 5 & 3 & 4 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

a

b

c

-1

解:

$$\text{a } \sigma = (1 \ 3 \ 5 \ 2 \ 6)(4)(7)$$

$$\tau = (1 \ 7)(2 \ 6)(3 \ 5 \ 4)$$

$$\text{b } \sigma = (1 \ 6)(1 \ 2)(1 \ 5)(1 \ 3)(1 \ 4)(4 \ 1)(1 \ 7)(7 \ 1)$$

$$\tau = (1 \ 7)(2 \ 6)(3 \ 4)(3 \ 5)$$

$$\text{c } \sigma\tau = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 7 & 1 & 2 & 5 & 4 & 6 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= (1 \ 7 \ 3 \ 2)(4 \ 5)(6)$$

$$\tau\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 5 & 2 & 4 & 3 & 6 & 7 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= (1 \ 5 \ 6 \ 7)(3 \ 4)(2)$$

$$\tau\sigma\tau^{-1} = \tau\sigma \circ \tau^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 5 & 2 & 4 & 3 & 6 & 7 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 7 & 6 & 4 & 5 & 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 1 & 7 & 3 & 6 & 4 & 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= (1)(3)(2 \ 7 \ 5 \ 4 \ 6)$$

6.8

 S_3

解:

$$I = (1)(2)(3) = (1)$$

$$a_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = (1 \ 2)(3)$$

$$a_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} = (1 \ 3)(2)$$

$$a_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} = (1)(2 \ 3)$$

$$a_4 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = (1 \ 2 \ 3)$$

$$a_5 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = (1 \ 3 \ 2)$$

$$H_0 = \{I\} \quad H_1 = S_3 \quad H_2 = \{I, (1 \ 2)\} \quad H_3 = \{I, (1 \ 3)\} \quad H_4 = \{I, (2 \ 3)\}$$

$$H_5 = \{I, (1\ 2\ 3), (1\ 3\ 2)\}$$

$$6.9 \quad G \quad M = \begin{matrix} & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{matrix}$$

$$a \quad G = \begin{matrix} & 1 & 15 & 24 & 15 & 24 \end{matrix}$$

$$b \quad G = \begin{matrix} & 1 & 1234 & 13 & 24 & 1432 \end{matrix}$$

$$c \quad G = \begin{matrix} & 1 & 12 & 23 & 13 \end{matrix}$$

解:

$$a \quad \begin{matrix} & 1^5 & 1 & 1^3 & 2^1 & 2 & 1^1 & 2^2 & 1 \end{matrix}$$

$$P\{x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5\} = \frac{1}{4}(x_1^5 + 2x_1^3x_2 + x_1x_2^2)$$

$$b \quad \begin{matrix} & 1^5 & 1 & 1^1 & 4^1 & 2 & 1^1 & 2^2 & 1 \end{matrix}$$

$$P\{x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5\} = \frac{1}{4}(x_1^5 + 2x_1x_4 + x_1x_2^2)$$

c

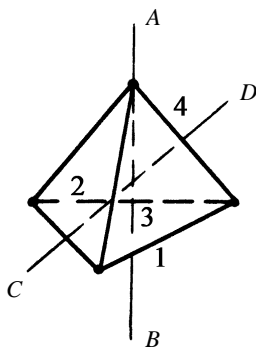
$$\begin{aligned} (1\ 2)(2\ 3) &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 & 4 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 4 & 5 \end{pmatrix} = (1\ 2\ 3) \notin G \end{aligned}$$

6.10

解:

$$N = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$$

6-1



6-1

1

$$I = (1)(2)(3)(4)$$

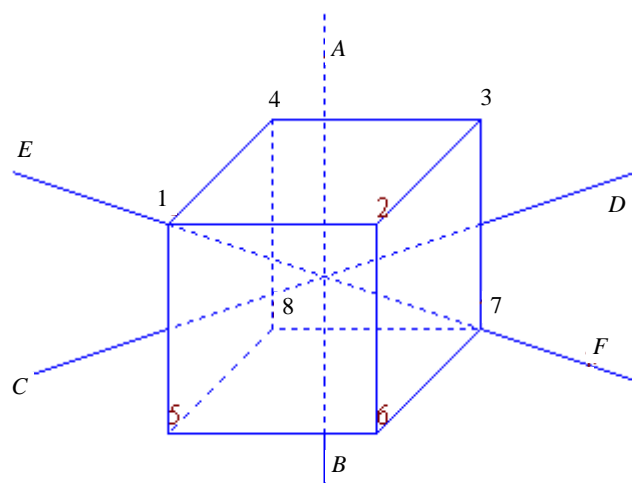
1⁴

2			6-1	AB	$\pm 120^\circ$
	8				
		1 234	1 ¹ 3 ¹		
3			6-1	CD	180°
12 34	2 ²	3	3		

$$t = \frac{1}{12} (3^4 + 8 \times 3^2 + 3 \times 3^2) = 15$$

15
6.11
解

$$N = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8\}$$



6-2

1	$I = (1)(2)(3)(4)(5)(6)(7)(8)$								1 ⁸
2					AB		$\frac{\pi}{2}$	$\frac{2\pi}{2}$	$\frac{3\pi}{2}$
	1 4 3 2	6 5 8 7	1 3	2 4	5 7	6 8	1 2 3 4	5 6 7 8	
4 ²	2 ⁴	4 ²	3		9				
3			EF	$\pm 120^\circ$			1 7	4 2 5	3 6 8
1	7	2 4 5	6 3 8	1 ²	3 ²		4	8	
4						CD	180°	1 5	2 8
3 7	4 6	(2) ⁴		6					
$ G = 24$									

$$t = \frac{1}{24} (2^8 + 3 \times 2^4 + 6 \times 2^2 + 8 \times 2^4 + 6 \times 2^4) = 23$$

23

6.12

6

解:

6-3

$$N = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$$

G

1

1

2

L

6

I =

1

2

3

4

5

6

1⁶

2

O

$$\frac{\pi}{3}$$

$$\frac{2\pi}{3}$$

$$\pi$$

$$\frac{4\pi}{3}$$

$$\frac{5\pi}{3}$$

1 2 3 4 5 6

1 3 5

2 4 6

1 4

2 5

3 6

1 5 3

2 4 6

1 6 5 4 3 2

5

6¹

3²

2³

3

AB

(1 2)(3 6)(4 5)

2³

3

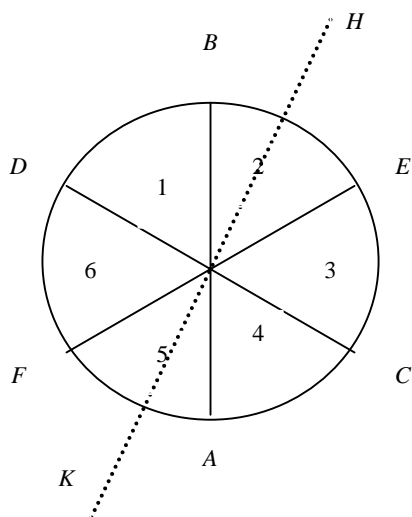
4

HK

(2)(5)(1 3)(4 6)

1² 2²

3



6-3

12

Pólya

$$t = \frac{1}{12} (3^6 + 2 \times 3^1 + 2 \times 3^2 + 3^3 + 3 \times 3^3 + 3 \times 3^4) = 92$$

92

6.13

5

3

6

解:

5

6-4

5

$$N = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$$

1

I =

1

2

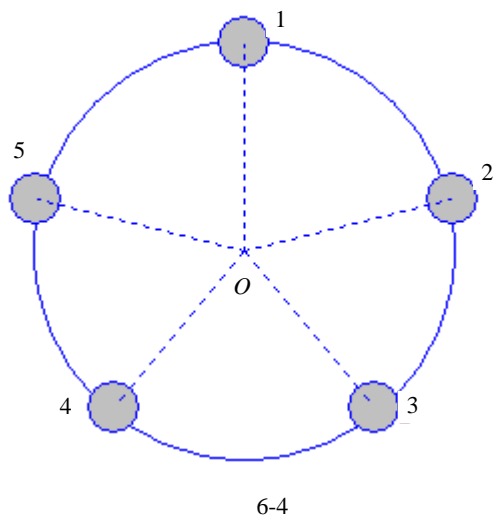
3

4

5

1⁵

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc}
 & 2 & & & O & & \frac{2\pi}{5} & \frac{4\pi}{5} & \frac{6\pi}{5} & \frac{8\pi}{5} & & \frac{2\pi}{5} \\
 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & & 4 & & & 5^1 & & \\
 & & 3 & & 1O & & & & 1 & 2 & 5 & 3 & 4 & & 1^1 & 2^2 \\
 & & & 5 & & & & & & & & & & & &
 \end{array}$$



$$P(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5) = \frac{1}{10}(x_1^5 + 4x_5 + 5x_1x_2^2)$$

$$P(3, 3, 3, 3, 3) = \frac{1}{10}(3^5 + 4 \times 3 + 5 \times 3 \times 3^2) = 39$$

$$\begin{array}{cc}
 3 & 39 \\
 36 &
 \end{array}$$

6.14

解:

6-5

r

y

b

4

$$N = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$$

$$I = \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & \end{array}$$

$$1^4$$

$$O \quad \pm \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 4 \quad 1 \ 4 \ 3 \ 2$$

$$4^1$$

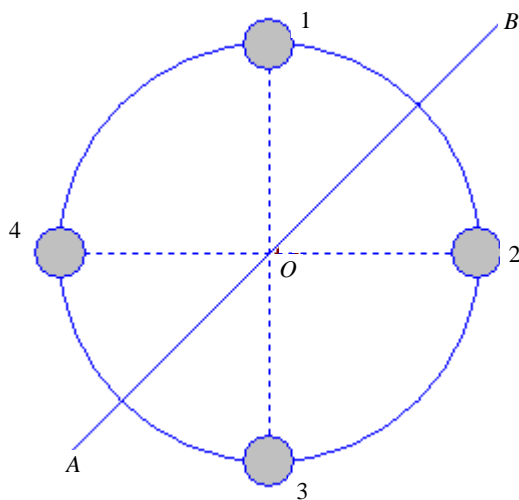
$$O \quad \pi$$

$$1 \ 3 \ 2 \ 4 \quad 2^2$$

$$13 \ 24$$

$$1 \ 3 \ 2 \ 4 \quad 2 \ 4 \ 1 \ 3$$

$$1^2 \ 2^1$$



6-5

5 AB 1 2 3 4 2² 2
8

$$P(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = \frac{1}{8} (x_1^4 + 2x_4 + x_2^2 + 2x_1^2x_2 + 2x_2^2) \\ = \frac{1}{8} (x_1^4 + 3x_2^2 + 2x_1^2x_2 + 2x_4)$$

$$x_i = r^i + y^i + b^i$$

$$P(r+y+b, r^2+y^2+b^2, r^3+y^3+b^3, r^4+y^4+b^4)$$

$$= \frac{1}{8} \left[(r+y+b)^4 + 3(r^2+y^2+b^2)^2 + 2(r+y+b)^2(r^2+y^2+b^2) + 2(r^4+y^4+b^4) \right]$$

$$r^2yb \quad (r+y+b)^4 \quad 2(r+y+b)^2(r^2+y^2+b^2) \quad r^2yb$$

$$(r+y+b)^4 \quad r^2yb \quad C_4^2 \cdot 2 = 12 \quad 2(r+y+b)^2(r^2+y^2+b^2) \quad r^2yb$$

$$2 \times 2 = 4$$

$$r^2yb \quad 2$$

$$2$$

$$6.15$$

$$4 \times 2$$

$$4$$

解:

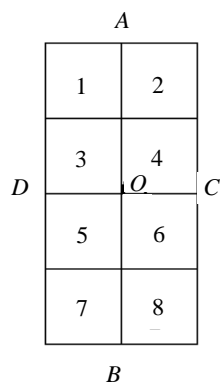
$$4 \times 2$$

$$4$$

$$4 \times 2$$

$$N = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8\}$$

$$6-6$$



6-6

1		$I =$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		1 ⁸					
2		O	π					1	8	2	7	3	6	4	5		2 ⁴
3	AB					1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8				2 ⁴
4	CD					1	7	2	8	3	5	4	6				2 ⁴
4																	

$$P(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5, x_6, x_7, x_8) = \frac{1}{4} [x_1^8 + 3x_2^4]$$

$$x_k = b^k + w^k$$

$$P(b+w, b^2+w^2, b^3+w^3, \text{L}, b^8+w^8)$$

$$= \frac{1}{4} [(b+w)^8 + 3(b^2+w^2)^4]$$

$$b=1 \quad w^4$$

$$P(1+w, 1+w^2, 1+w^3, \text{L}, 1+w^8)$$

$$= \frac{1}{4} [(1+w)^8 + 3(1+w^2)^4]$$

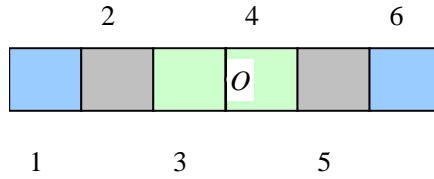
$$w^4$$

$$\frac{1}{4} [C_8^4 + 3C_4^2] = \frac{1}{4} [70 + 18] = 22$$

22

6.16

1 × 6



6-7

解一 Burnside

6-7

3



6

$$3^6=729$$

$$M=\{x_1 \ x_2 \ x_3 \ \text{L} \ x_{729}\}$$

180°

M

1

I

$$I= \begin{matrix} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & \text{L} & x_{729} \end{matrix} \quad c_1 \ I = 729$$

2

180°

σ

1 6 2 5 3 4

$x_i \ 180^\circ$

$$c_1(\sigma)=3^3=27$$

$$G=\{I \ \sigma \}$$

G

$$|G|=2$$

Burnside

G

$$t=\frac{1}{2}(729+27)=378$$

378

解二 Pólya

1×6

M

6

1×6

M

G

2

1^6

$2^3 \ 1$

O

π

6-7

G

$$P(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5, x_6)=\frac{1}{2}(x_1^6+x_2^3)$$

$$P(3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3)=\frac{1}{2}(3^6+3^3)=378$$

378

6.17

6

解:

6

M

6

M

G

24

1^6

$1^2 \ 4^1 \ 6$

$1^2 \ 2^2 \ 3$

$2^3 \ 6$

$3^2 \ 8$

§ 6.4

4 G

$$P(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5, x_6) = \frac{1}{24} (x_1^6 + 6x_1^2x_4 + 6x_2^3 + 3x_1^2x_2^2 + 8x_3^2)$$

$$P(2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2) = \frac{1}{24} (2^6 + 6 \cdot 2^2 \cdot 2 + 6 \cdot 2^3 + 3 \cdot 2^2 \cdot 2^2 + 8 \cdot 2^2) = 10$$

10

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc} 6.18 & & & & & & 6 & a_n & n \\ n=0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & a_n & a_3 \end{array}$$

解:

 $M \quad G$

$$P(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5, x_6) = \frac{1}{24} (x_1^6 + 6x_1^2x_4 + 6x_2^3 + 3x_1^2x_2^2 + 8x_3^2)$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} b & w & w=1 & a_n \\ P(1+b, 1+b^2, +b^3, 1+b^4, 1+b^5, 1+b^6) \\ = \frac{1}{24} ((1+b)^6 + 6(1+b)^2(1+b^4) + 6(1+b^2)^3 + 3(1+b)^2(1+b^2)^2 + 8(1+b^3)^2) \end{array}$$

$$a_3 = \frac{1}{24} \binom{6}{3} + 3 \times 2 \times 2 + 8 \times 2 = 2$$

6.19

解:

$$6.10 \quad G$$

$$P(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = \frac{1}{12} (x_1^4 + 8x_1x_3 + 3x_2^2)$$

$$P(3, 3, 3, 3) = \frac{1}{12} (3^4 + 8 \cdot 3 \cdot 3 + 3 \cdot 3^2) = 15$$

15

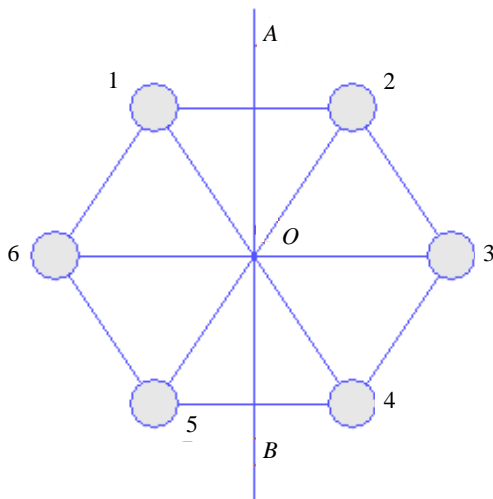
6.20 7

4

$$\text{解: } 6-8 \quad N = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$$

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc} 1 & I = & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 1^6 \\ 2 & O & & & \frac{\pi}{3} & & & & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 6^1 & & & & O & & \frac{5\pi}{3} & & 2 & & & & & \\ 3 & O & & & \frac{2\pi}{3} & & & & 1 & 3 & 5 & 2 & 4 & 6 & 3^2 \\ & & O & & & \frac{4\pi}{3} & & 2 & & & & & & \end{array}$$

4 O π 1 4 2 5 3 6 2³
 5 AB 1 2 3 6 4 5 2³
 3 3
 6 14 1 4 2 6 3 5 1² 2²
 3 3



6-8

12

G

$$P\{x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_6\} = \frac{1}{12}(x_1^6 + 2x_6 + 2x_3^2 + x_2^3 + 3x_2^3 + 3x_1^2x_2^2)$$

$$x_i = b_1^i + b_2^i + b_3^i + b_4^i + b_5^i + b_6^i + b_7^i$$

$$P(b_1 + b_2 + b_3 + b_4 + b_5 + b_6 + b_7, L, b_1^6 + b_2^6 + b_3^6 + b_4^6 + b_5^6 + b_6^6 + b_7^6)$$

$$= \frac{1}{12} \left[\left(\sum_{i=1}^7 b_i \right)^6 + 2 \sum_{i=1}^7 b_i^6 + 2 \left(\sum_{i=1}^7 b_i^3 \right)^2 + 4 \left(\sum_{i=1}^7 b_i^2 \right)^3 + 3 \left(\sum_{i=1}^7 b_i \right)^2 \left(\sum_{i=1}^7 b_i^2 \right)^2 \right]$$

$$4 \quad b_i \quad \left(\sum_{i=1}^7 b_i \right)^6 \quad 3 \left(\sum_{i=1}^7 b_i \right)^2 \left(\sum_{i=1}^7 b_i^2 \right)^2$$

$$\binom{6}{3} \times 7 \times 6 \times 5 \times 4 + \frac{1}{2} \binom{6}{2} \binom{4}{2} \times 7 \times 6 \times 5 \times 4 + \binom{6}{2} \times 7 \times 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 + 7 \times 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 =$$

$$97440 \quad 3 \times 4 \times \binom{7}{2} \binom{5}{2} = 2520$$

4

$$\frac{1}{12}(97440 + 2520) = 8330$$

第七章 网 络 流

一、内容提要

(一) 基本概念

定义 7.1

$$G = (V, E)$$

$$1 \quad 0 \quad s \quad s$$

$$2 \quad 0 \quad t \quad t$$

$$3 \quad i \quad j \quad c \quad i \quad j$$

定义 7.2 $G = (V, E)$ $f = f_{ij}$

$$1 \quad f_{ij} \leq c_{ij} \quad f_{ij} = 0$$

$$2 \quad \sum_{j \in V} f_{ij} = \sum_{k \in V} f_{jk}$$

定义 7.3 $G = (V, E)$ $f = f_{ij}$ $f_{ij} = c_{ij}$ f_{ij}

定义 7.4 $G = (V, E)$ s $\sum_{j \in V} f(s, j) = f_s = f_v$

定义 7.5 $G = (V, E)$ $f = f_v$

定义 7.6 $G = (V, E)$

$$V = S \cup \bar{S} \quad S \cap \bar{S} = \emptyset$$

$$G = (S, \bar{S})$$

定义 7.7 $c(S, \bar{S})$

$$c(S, \bar{S}) = \sum_{\substack{i \in S \\ j \in \bar{S}}} c(i, j)$$

定理 7.1 f_v

$$\max f_v \leq \min c(S, \bar{S})$$

推论

$$\sum_{i \in V} f(s, i) = \sum_{j \in V} f(j, t)$$

定义 7.8 $G = (V, E)$ (s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n)

$$1 \quad s_0 = s, s_n = t, s_i \in V, i = 0, 1, \dots, n$$

$$2 \quad (s_j, s_{j+1}) \in E \quad (s_{j+1}, s_j) \in E \quad j = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$$

$$(s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n) \in G \quad s \quad t \quad (s_j, s_{j+1}) \in E$$

$$(s_{i+1}, s_i) \in E$$

定义 7.9 $G = (V, E)$ $f(i, j) < c(i, j)$, $f(i, j) > 0$

注意: f

定理 7.2 $\max f_v = \min c(s, \bar{s})$

推论

1

$$c(i, j) \quad i \quad j \quad i \quad j \quad j \quad i$$

2

$$s_1 \quad s_2 \quad \dots \quad s_m \quad t_1 \quad t_2 \quad \dots \quad t_m$$

$$G$$

$$s \quad t \quad s \quad s_1 \quad s_2 \quad \dots \quad s_m \quad s \quad s_1 \quad s \quad s_2 \quad \dots \quad s_m$$

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccc}
 & & & t_1 & t_2 & L & t_m & & t & & t_1 & t & t_2 & t & L \\
 & & & & & & s & G & & t & G & & & & \\
 t_n & t & & & & & & & & & & & & & \\
 3 & & & & & & & & & & & & & & \\
 & & i & & & i' & i'' & & i' & & i'' & & i' & i'' & \\
 c & i' & i'' & =c & i & & h & i & & h & i'' & i & j & & i'' & j \\
 h & j & V & & & & & & & & & & & & \\
 4 & & & & & i & & & i & j & & & j & & &
 \end{array}$$

§ 7.5

定义 7.10

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & i & j & & c & i & j & b & i & j \\
 b & i & j & \leq c & i & j & & b & i & j & \leq f & i & j & \leq c & i & j \\
 & & & f & & & & & & & & & & &
 \end{array}$$

1

?

2

定理 7.3

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & f & (S, \bar{S}) \\
 b(S, \bar{S}) - c(\bar{S}, S) \leq f_v \leq c(S, \bar{S}) - b(\bar{S}, S)
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{l}
 c(\bar{S}, S) = \sum_{\substack{i \in \bar{S} \\ j \in S}} c(i, j), c(S, \bar{S}) = \sum_{\substack{i \in S \\ j \in \bar{S}}} c(j, i) \\
 b(S, \bar{S}) = \sum_{\substack{i \in \bar{S} \\ j \in S}} b(i, j), b(\bar{S}, S) = \sum_{\substack{i \in S \\ j \in \bar{S}}} b(j, i)
 \end{array}$$

定理 7.3

$$\begin{array}{l}
 (S_1, \bar{S}_1), (S_2, \bar{S}_2) \\
 b(S_1, \bar{S}_1) - c(\bar{S}_1, S_1) \leq f_v \leq c(S_1, \bar{S}_1) - b(\bar{S}_1, S_1) \\
 b(S_2, \bar{S}_2) - c(\bar{S}_2, S_2) \leq f_v \leq c(S_2, \bar{S}_2) - b(\bar{S}_2, S_2)
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{l}
 b(S_1, \bar{S}_1) - c(\bar{S}_1, S_1) > c(S_2, \bar{S}_2) - b(\bar{S}_2, S_2) \\
 b(S_2, \bar{S}_2) - c(\bar{S}_2, S_2) > c(S_1, \bar{S}_1) - b(\bar{S}_1, S_1)
 \end{array}$$

定理 7.4

$$(S, \bar{S}) \quad \max f_v = \min \{c(S, \bar{S}) - b(\bar{S}, S)\}$$

(二) 基本方法

1 ———

1

$$\delta_{ij} = \begin{cases} c(i, j) - f(i, j) & (i, j) \\ f(i, j) & (i, j) \end{cases}$$

$$\delta = \min \{\delta_{ij}\}$$

2

A s^+

B $x \quad x \quad y$

a 若 $(x, y) \in E$, 且 $f(x, y) < c(x, y)$, 令 $\delta_y = \min \{c(x, y) - f(x, y), \delta_x\}$ y

(x^+, δ_y) , 若 $f(x, y) = c(x, y)$ y

b 若 $(y, x) \in E$, 且 $f(y, x) > 0$, 令 $\delta_y = \min \{f(y, x), \delta_x\}$ y

(x^-, δ_y) ; 若 $f(y, x) = 0$ y

C B $t \quad t$

$s \quad t \quad B \quad t$

$s \quad t$

A $u=t$

B $u \quad (v^+, \delta_u)$,

$$f(v, u) \leftarrow f(v, u) + \delta_u$$

$$u \quad (v^-, \delta_u), \quad f(u, v) \leftarrow f(u, v) - \delta_u$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} C & v=s & A & u=v & B \\ 2 & & & & \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{llll} & x & x & y \\ \text{a} & f(x, y) < c(x, y) & \partial_y = \min\{c(x, y) - f(x, y), \partial_x\} & y \quad (x^+, \partial_y) \\ f(x, y) = c(x, y) & y & & \\ \text{b} & f(x, y) > c(x, y) & \partial_y = \min\{f(y, x) - b(y, x), \partial_x\} & y \quad (x^-, \partial_y) \\ f(y, x) = b(y, x) & y & & \end{array}$$

3

$$G = V \cup E$$

$$\overline{G}(V, E)$$

$$G \quad \hat{G} = (\hat{V}, \hat{E})$$

$$\hat{G}$$

$$\hat{G} = (\hat{V}, \hat{E})$$

$$1 \quad \hat{G} \quad G \quad \hat{S} \quad \hat{t} \quad \hat{G}$$

$$2 \quad \hat{G} \quad G \quad \hat{c}(i, j) = c(i, j) - b(i, j) \quad \hat{c}(i, j) \quad \hat{G}$$

$i \quad j$

$$3 \quad G \quad i \quad j \quad \hat{c}(\hat{s}, j) = b(i, j) \quad \hat{S}$$

$$j \quad \hat{c}(i, \hat{t}) = b(i, j) \quad i \quad \hat{t}$$

$$4 \quad G \quad s \quad t \quad c(t, s) = \infty$$

$$\hat{G} \quad G \quad 7.5$$

$$\text{定理 7.5} \quad G \quad \hat{G} \quad \hat{f}$$

\hat{t}

$$\text{注意: } \hat{G} \quad \hat{f}$$

$$\hat{f}(i, j) = f(i, j) - b(i, j)$$

$$\hat{f}(i, \hat{t}) = c(i, \hat{t})$$

$$\hat{f}(\hat{s}, j) = \hat{c}(\hat{s}, j)$$

$$\hat{f}(t, s) = f_v$$

$$\hat{G} \quad \hat{f} \quad 7.5 \quad G$$

$$f(i, j) = \hat{f}(i, j) + b(i, j)$$

$$4 \quad G$$

$$\hat{G} \quad 7.5$$

$$1 \quad G \quad \hat{G}$$

$$2 \quad \S 7.4 \quad \hat{G} \quad \hat{f}$$

$$3 \quad \hat{G} \quad \hat{t}$$

$$G$$

$$4 \quad f(i, j) = \hat{f}(i, j) + b(i, j) \quad G$$

$$5 \quad \S 7.6 \quad G$$

$$5$$

$$1$$

$$l(\mu(s_1, s_n)) = \sum_{(i, j) \in (s_1, s_n)} l(i, j) \quad G = V \cup E \quad l(i, j) \quad i, j \quad \min\{l[\mu(s_1, s_n)]\}$$

$$G = V \cup E \quad V = s_1 \cup s_2 \cup \dots \cup s_n \quad \Gamma_i(j, i, j) \cup V \cup i, j \cup E$$

$$\pi^*(i) = \begin{cases} \min\{l(\mu(s_1, i))\}, & i \in V \\ 0, & i = s_1 \end{cases}$$

$$V \quad i \quad \pi(i) \quad \pi(i)$$

$$\pi(i) = \begin{cases} \pi^*(i) & i \in S \\ \min_{k \in S \cap \Gamma_i^{-1}} \{\pi(k) + l(k, i)\} & i \in \bar{S} \end{cases}$$

$$2 \quad \text{Moore-Dijkstra}$$

$$= s_1 \cup s_2 \cup \dots \cup s_n \cup \pi(s_1) = 0$$

$$\pi(i) = \begin{cases} l(s_1, i), & i \in \Gamma_{s_1} \\ \infty, & i \notin \Gamma_{s_1} \end{cases}$$

$$j \in \bar{S} \quad \pi(j) = \min_{i \in \bar{S}} \pi(i)$$

$$\bar{S} \leftarrow \bar{S} - \{j\}$$

$$|\bar{S}| = 0 \quad 3$$

$$i \in \Gamma_j \cap \bar{S}$$

$$\pi(i) \leftarrow \min\{\pi(i), \pi(j) + l(j, i)\}$$

6

1

$$G = (V, E) \quad d(i, j) \quad E$$

$$i, j \quad c(i, j) \quad i, j$$

$$f_v$$

$$\min_{\substack{\text{所有} \\ (i, j)}} \sum d(i, j) f(i, j)$$

$$i, j \quad f(i, j)$$

$$\sum f(i, j) - \sum f(j, i) = \begin{cases} f_v & i = s \\ 0 & i \neq s, t \\ -f_v & i = t \end{cases}$$

$$0 = f(i, j) \leq c(i, j)$$

2

Busacker Gowan 1961

$$\mu(s, t) \quad \bar{f} = \min_{(i, j) \in \mu(s, t)} \{c(i, j)\}$$

$$\bar{f}$$

∞

$$\mu(s, t) \quad i, j \quad j, i \quad c(j, i) = \bar{f} \quad d(0, i)$$

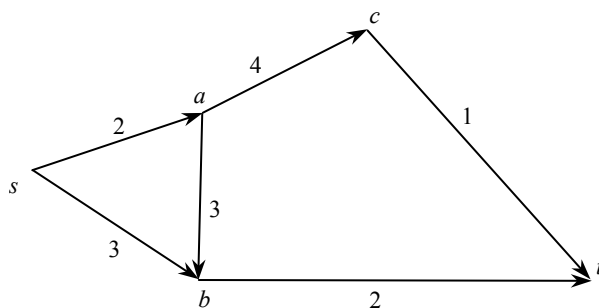
$$= -d(i, j)$$

f_v

s, t

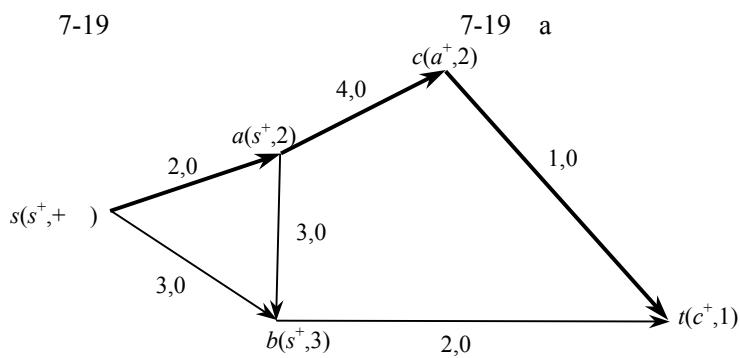
二、习题解答

7.1 7-19



7-19

1 7-19



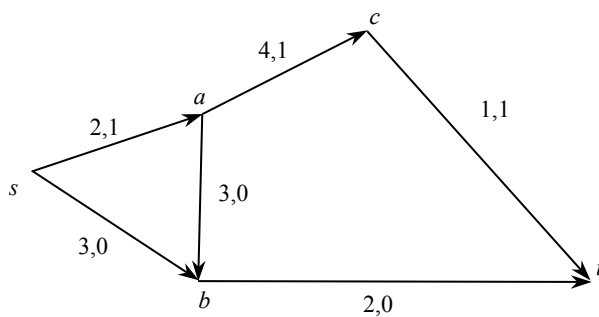
7-19 a

2 7-19 a

s a c t

$\delta_t=1$

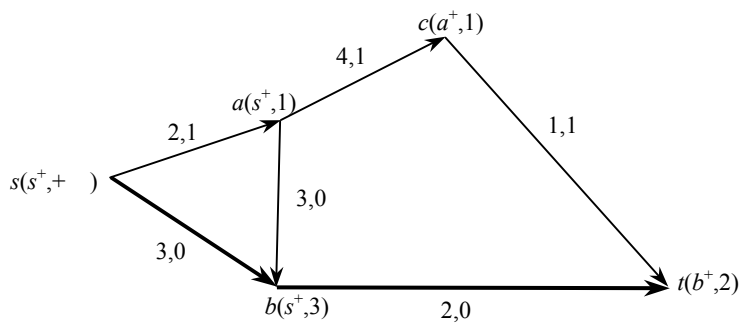
7-19 b



7-19 b

3 7-19 b

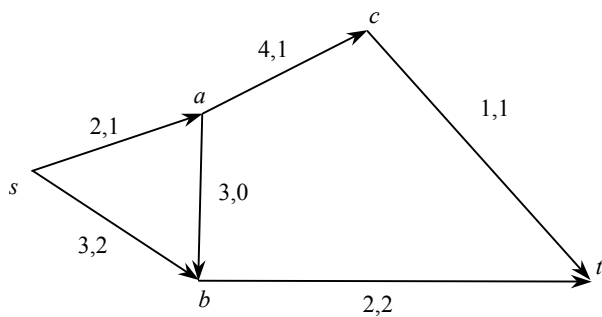
7-19 c



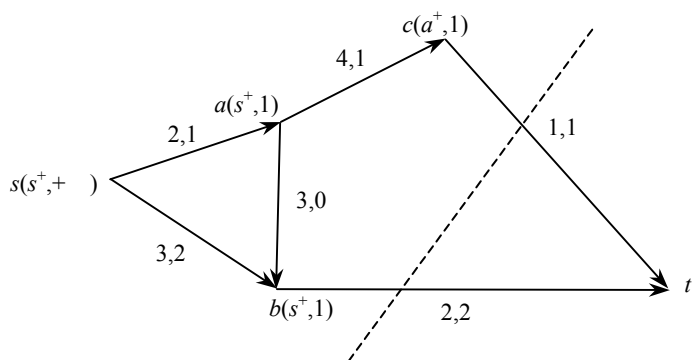
7-19 c

4 7-19 c s b t $\delta_t=2$

7-19 d



7-19 d



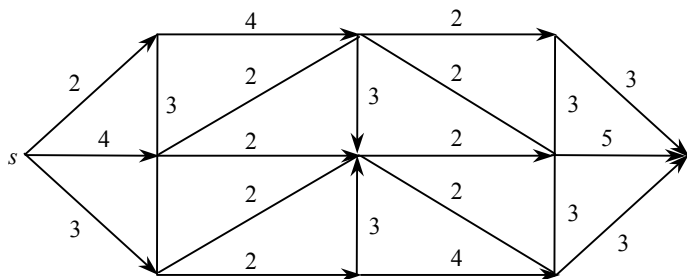
7-19 e

5 7-19 d 7-19 e t
 s t

3

7.2

7-20

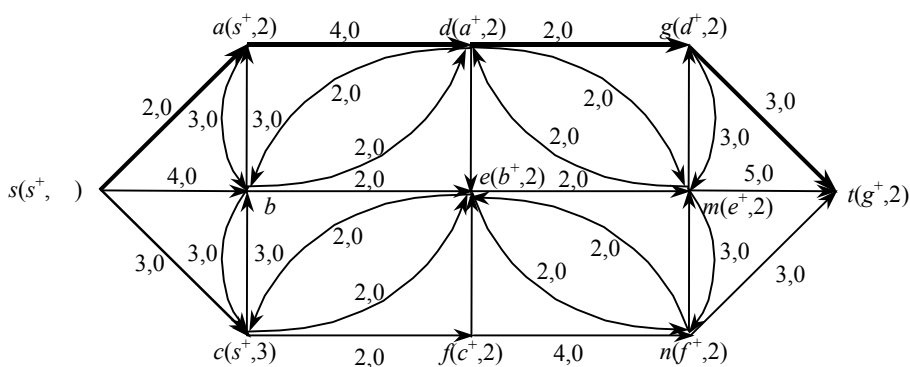


7-20

7-20

7.5

7-20 a



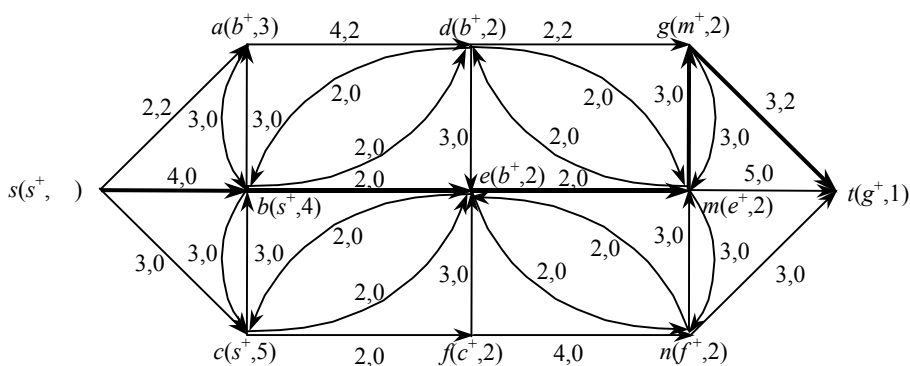
7-20 a

7-20 a

s a d q t

$\delta_t=2$

7-20 b



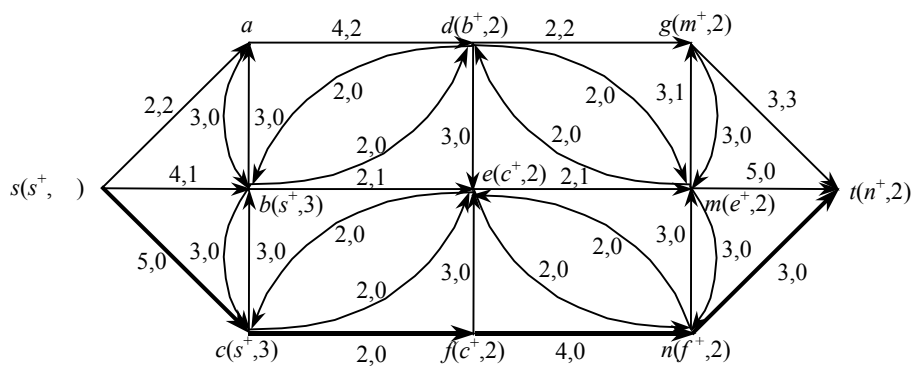
7-20 b

7-20 b

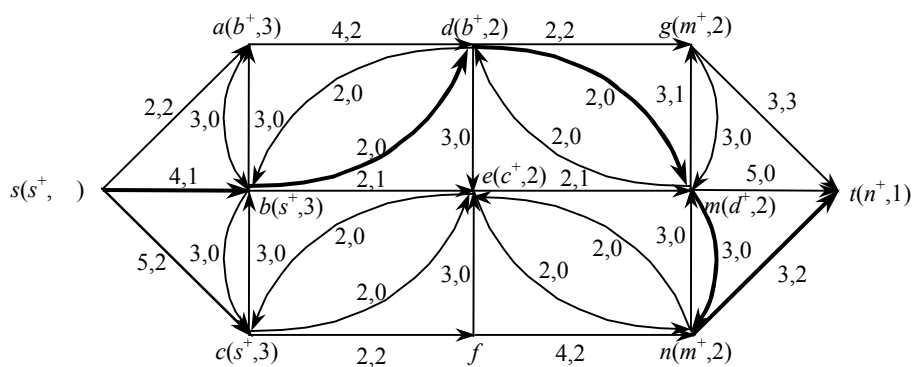
$s \ b \ e \ m \ g \ t$

$\delta t=1 \ L$

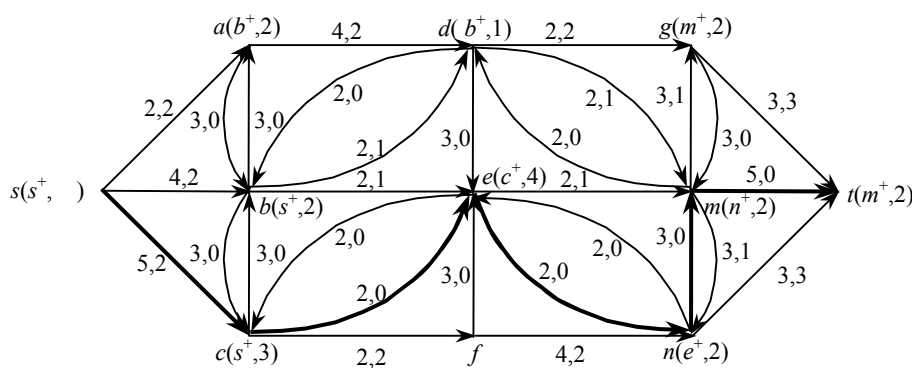
7-20 c d e f g h



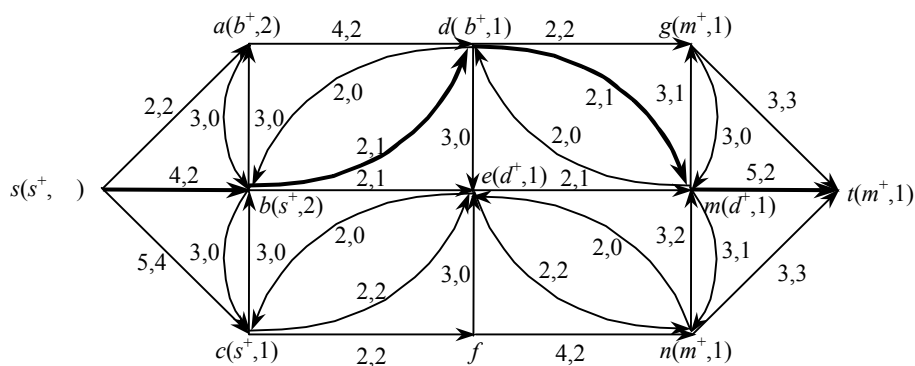
7-20 c



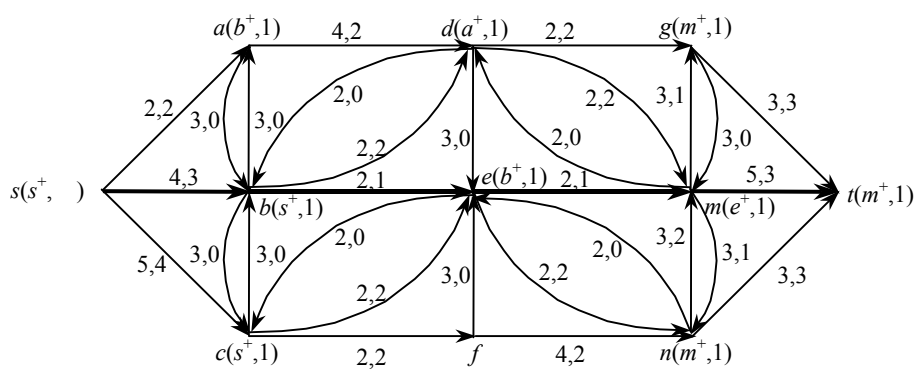
7-20 d



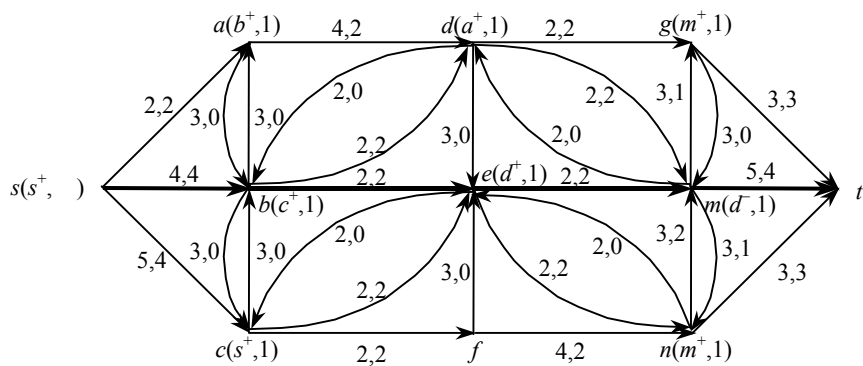
7-20 e



7-20 f



7-20 g



7-20 h

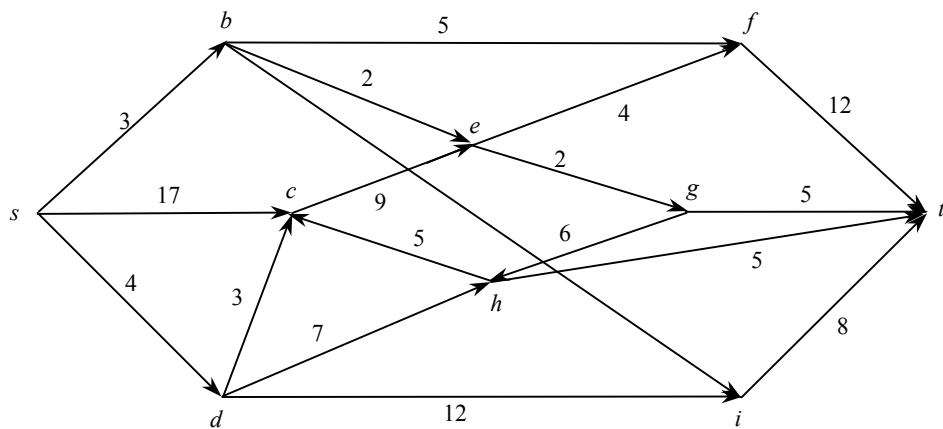
7-20 h t

s t

10

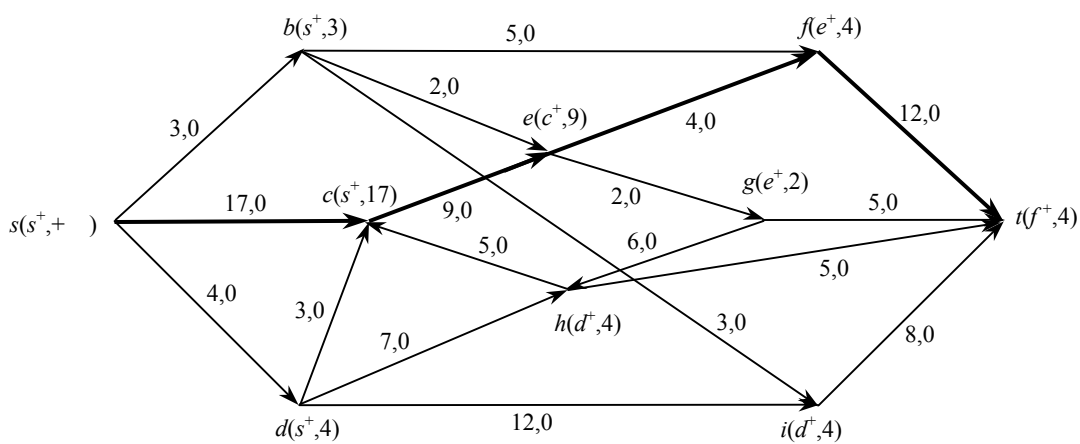
7.3

7-21

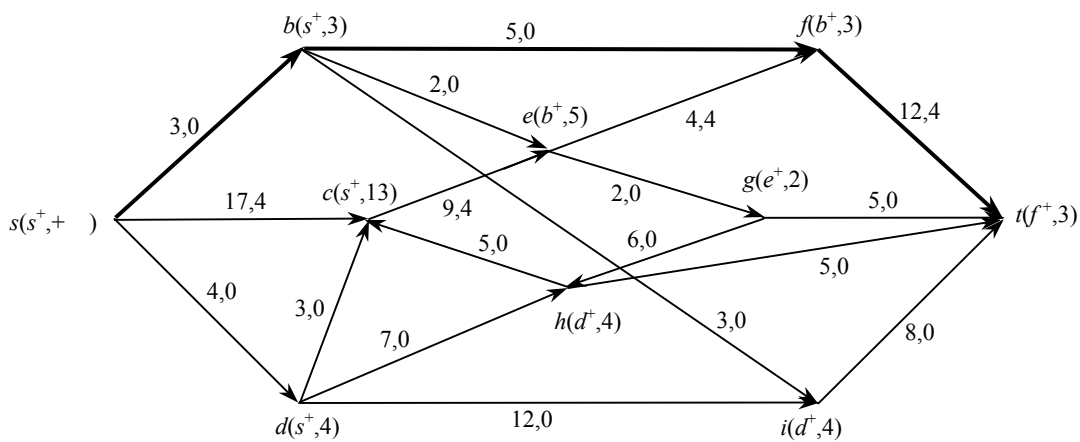


7-21

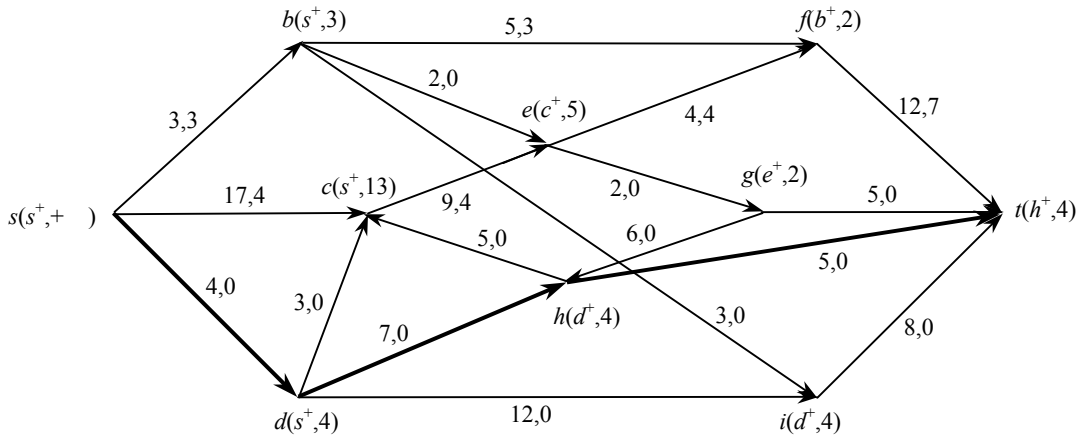
7-21



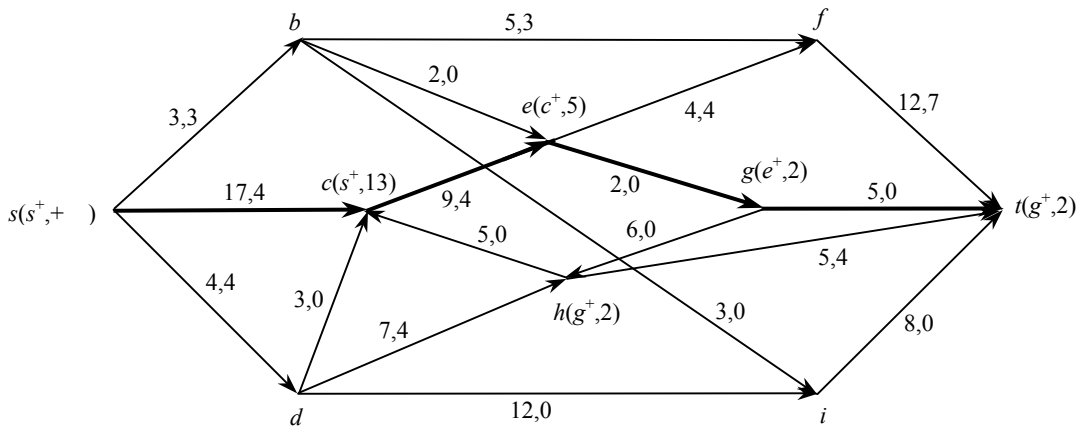
7-21 a



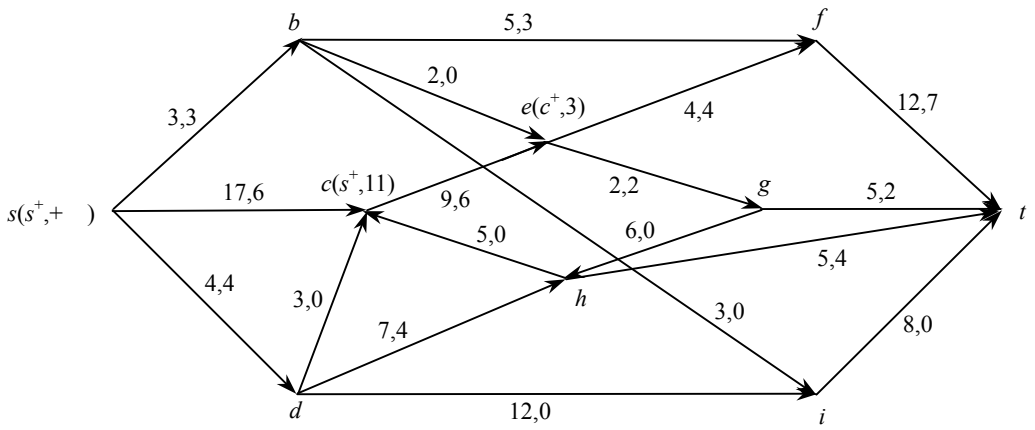
7-21 b



7-21 c



7-21 d



7-21 e

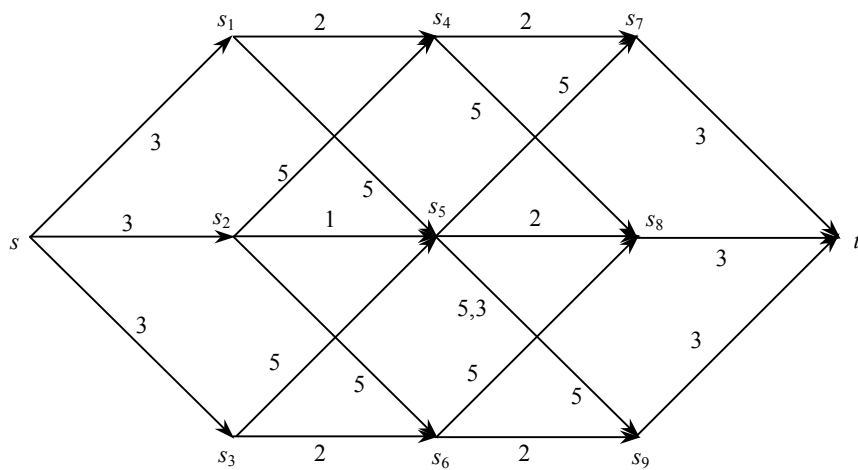
t

$s \quad t$

13

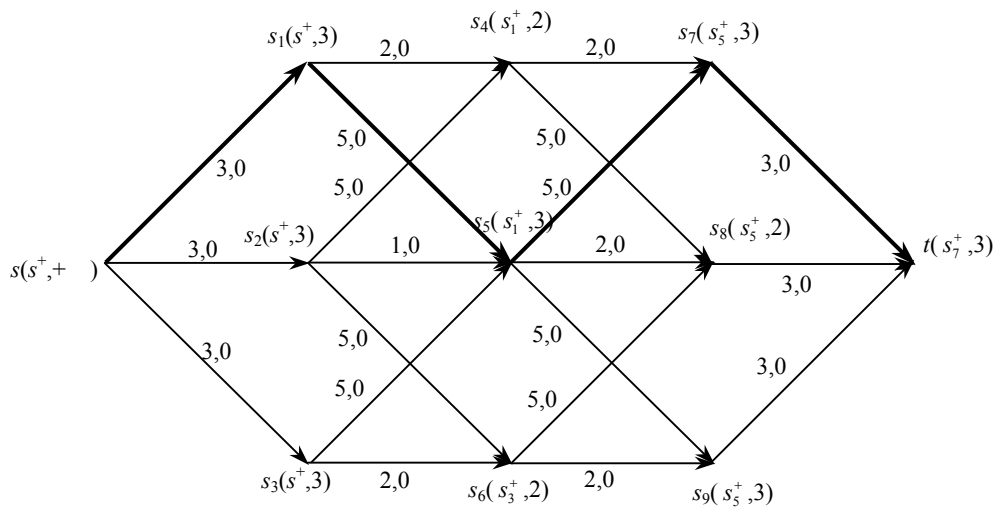
7.4

7-22

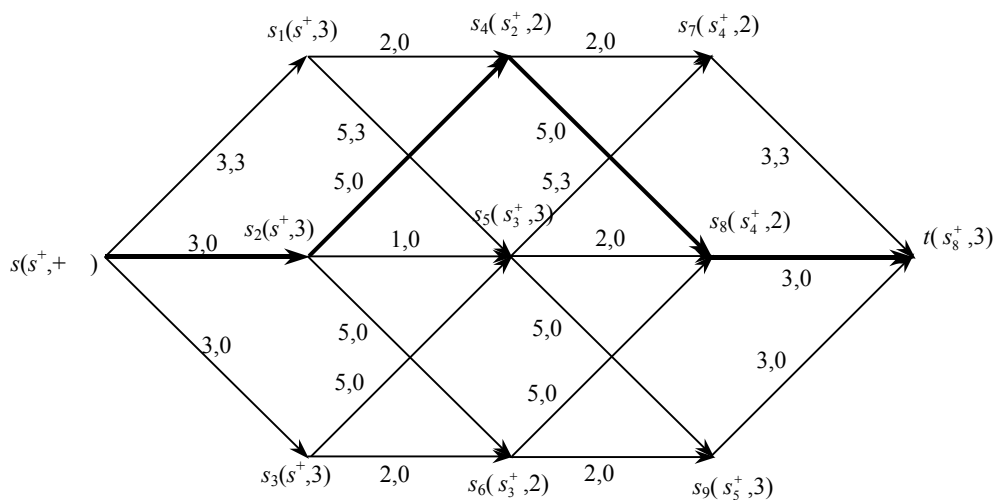


7-22

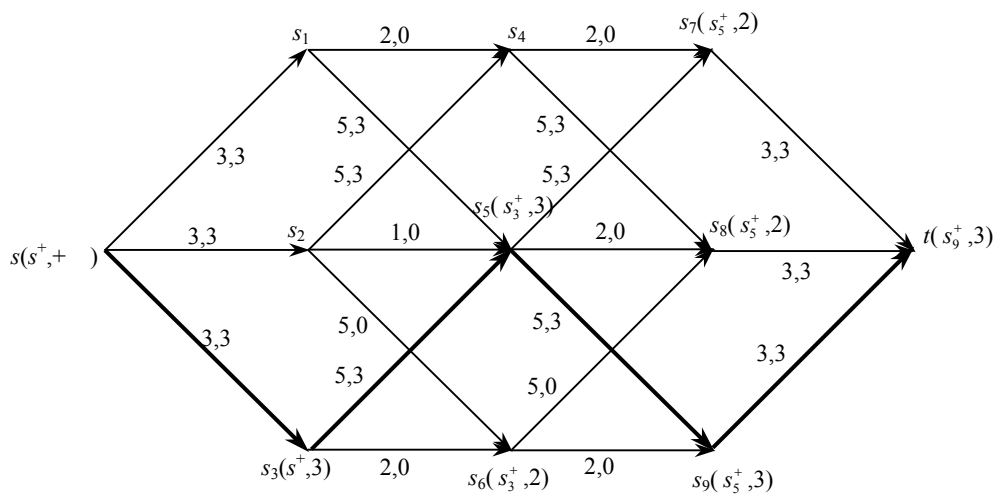
7-22



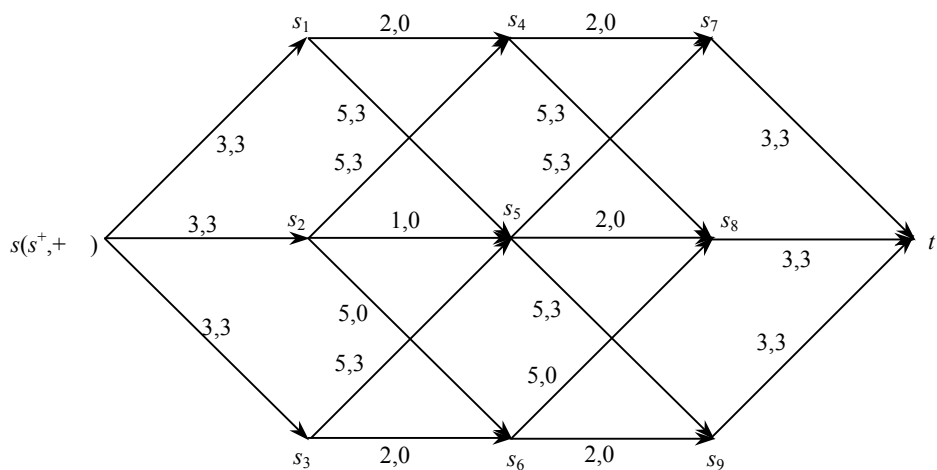
7-22 a



7-22 b



7-22 c

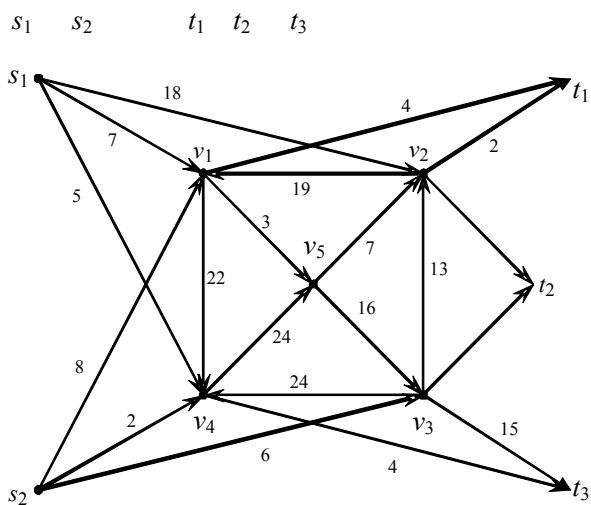


7-22 d

t s

9

7.5 s_1 s_2 7-23 t_1 t_2 t_3

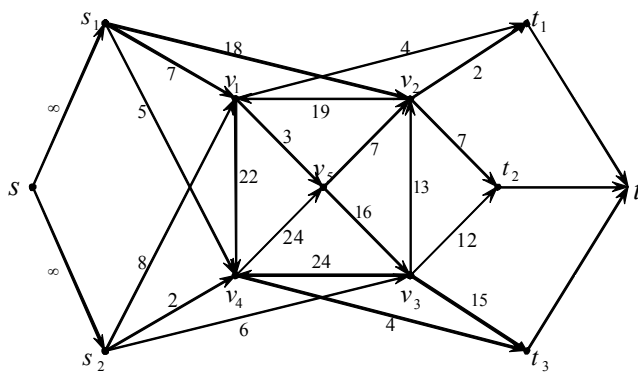


7-23

§ 7-5

7-23

7-23 a



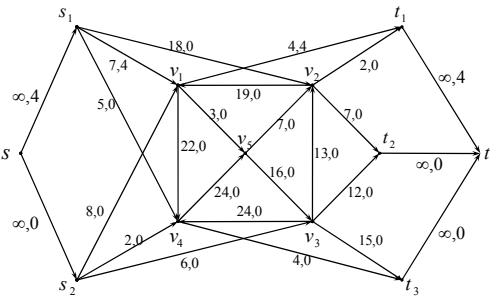
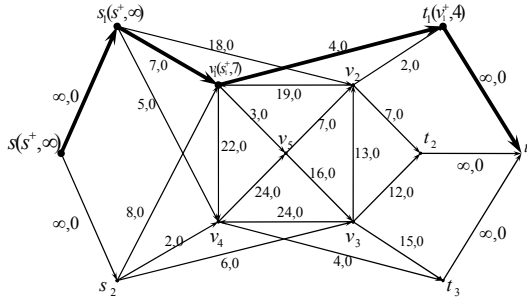
7-23 a

7-23 a

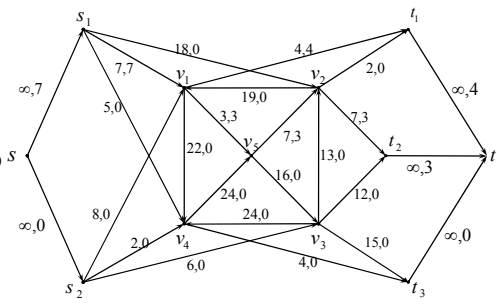
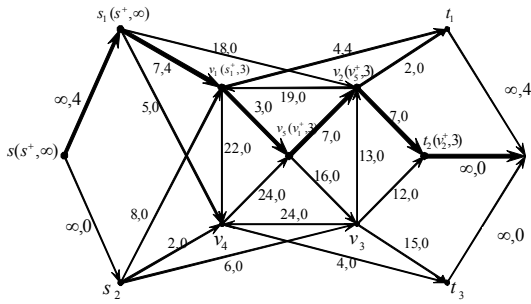
7-23

b 7-23 c 7-23 d 7-23 e 7-23 f 7-23 g 7-23 h 7-23 i 7-23 j

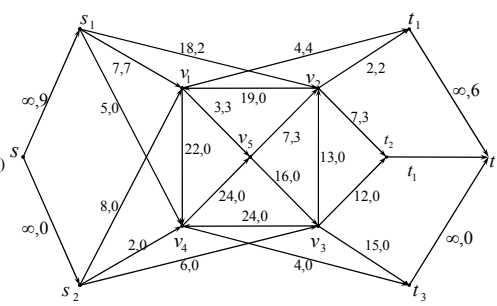
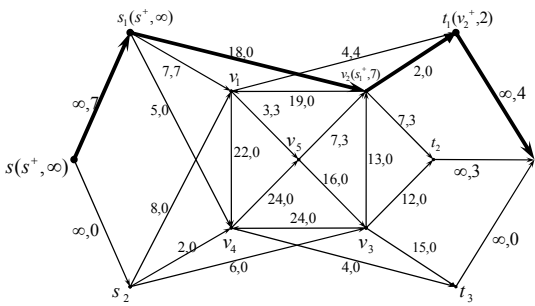
7-23 k



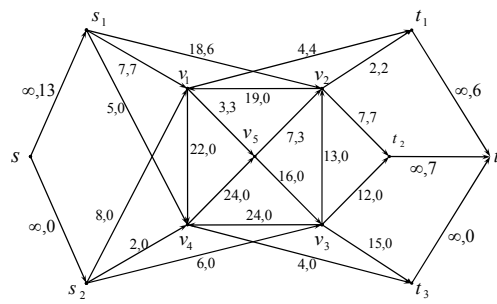
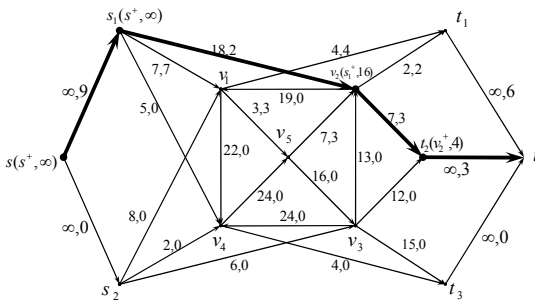
7-23 b



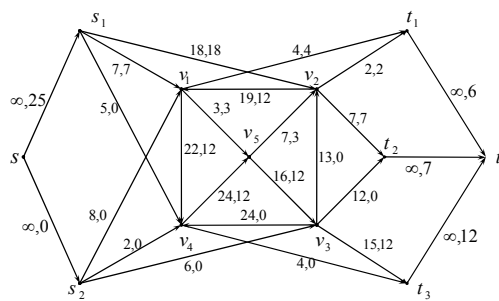
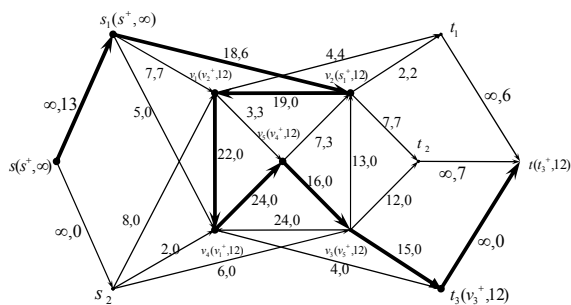
7-23 c



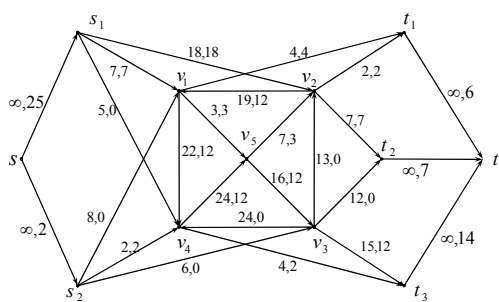
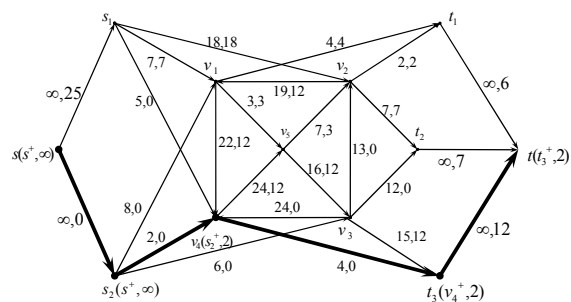
7-23 d



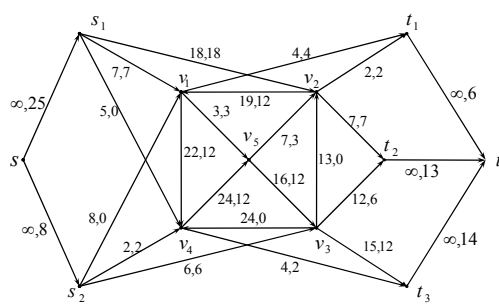
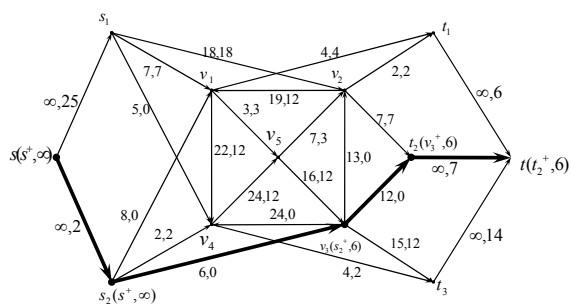
7-23 e



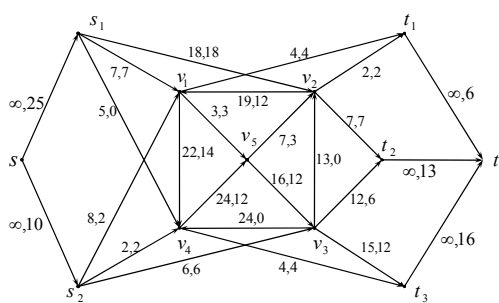
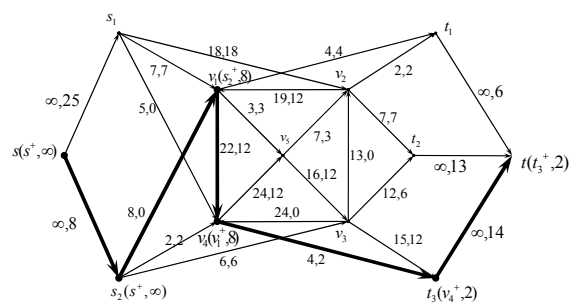
7-23 f



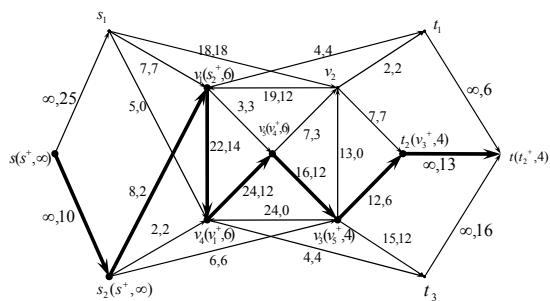
7-23 g



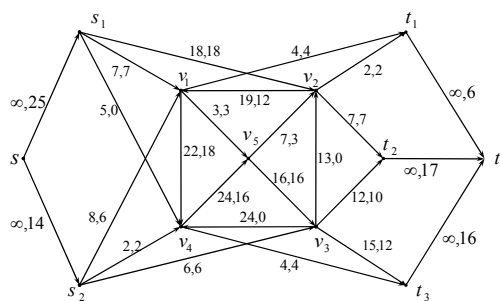
7-23 h



7-23 i



7-23 j



7-23 k

t

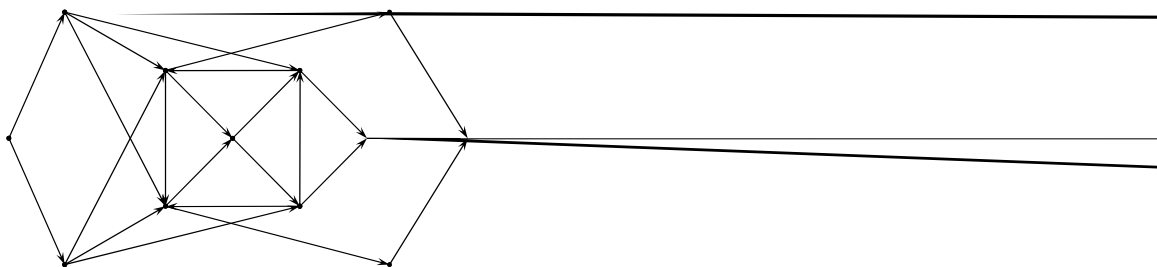
$s \quad t$

7-23

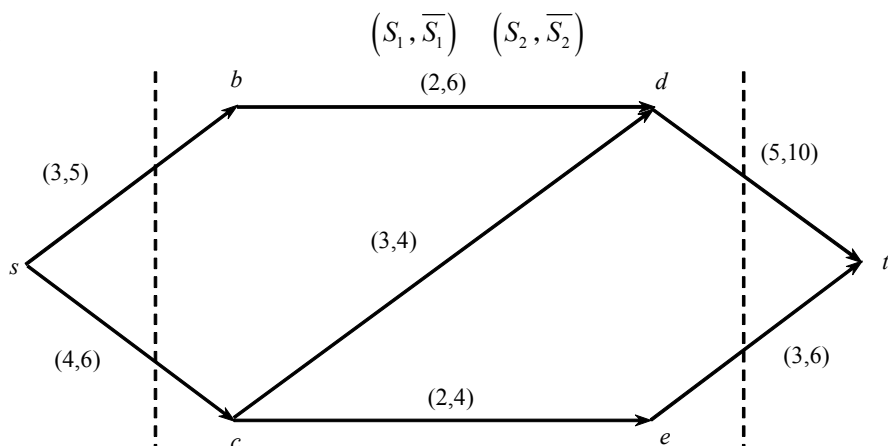
39

7-23 l

7-23



1



$$S_1 = \{s\} \quad \overline{S_1} = \{b, c, d, e, t\}$$

$$C = (S_1, \overline{S_1}) - b(\overline{S_1}, S_1) = 5 + 6 - 0 = 11$$

$$S_2 = \{s, b, c, d, e\} \quad \overline{S_2} = \{t\}$$

$$b(S_2, \overline{S_2}) - C(\overline{S_2}, S_2) = 9 + 3 - 0 = 12$$

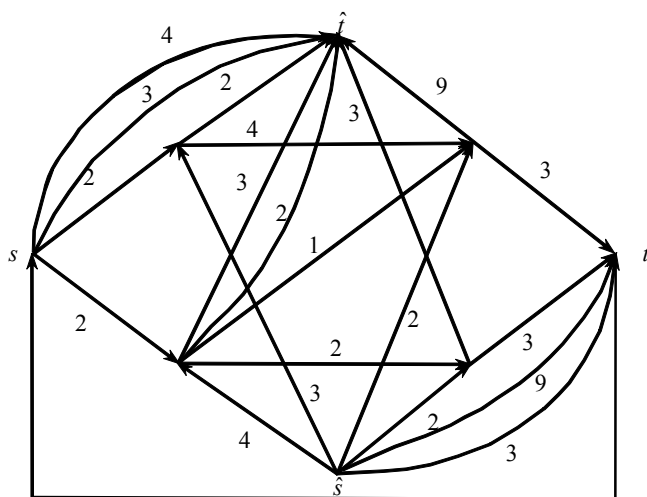
$$b(S_2, \overline{S_2}) - C(\overline{S_2}, S_2) > C(S_1, \overline{S_1}) - b(\overline{S_1}, S_1) \quad 7.3$$

2

§ 7.7

\overline{G}

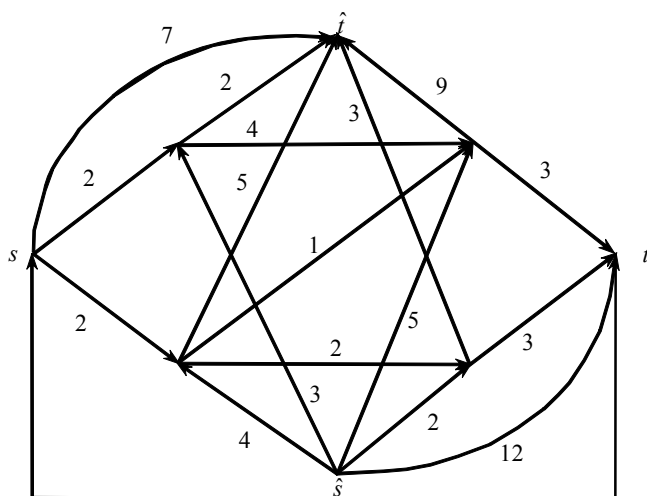
7-24 a



7-24 a

7-24 a

7-24 b

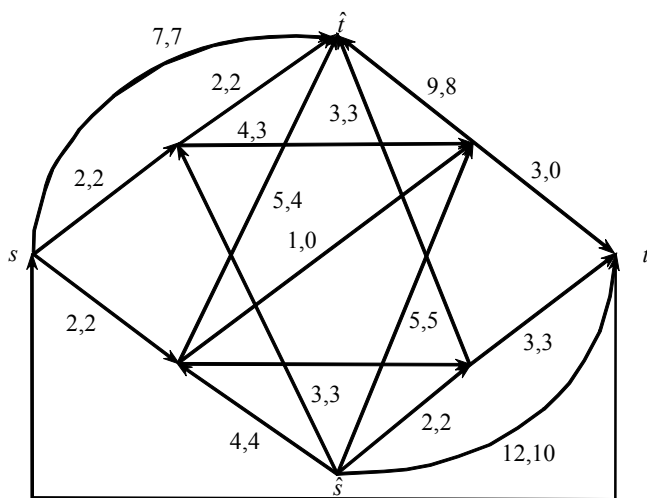


7-24 b

\bar{G}

7-24 b

7-24 c



7-24 c

7-24 c

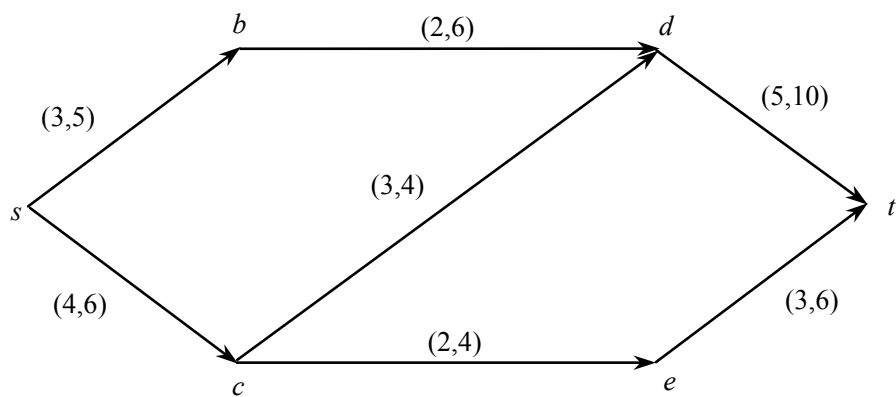
t

7.5

7.7

7-25

$s \quad t$



7-25

解: (1

§ 7.7

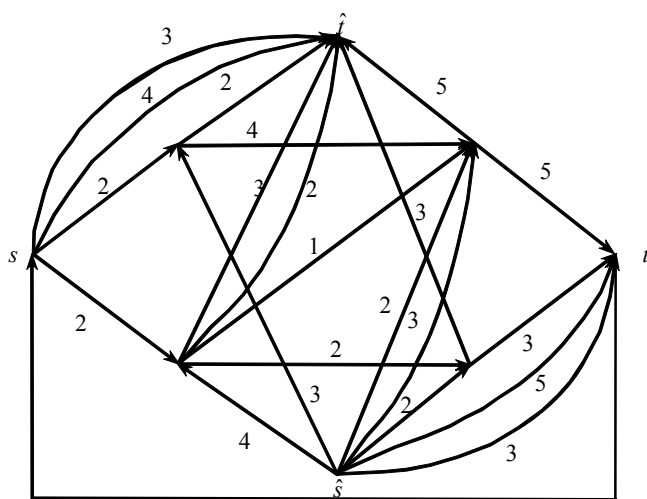
7-25

G^c

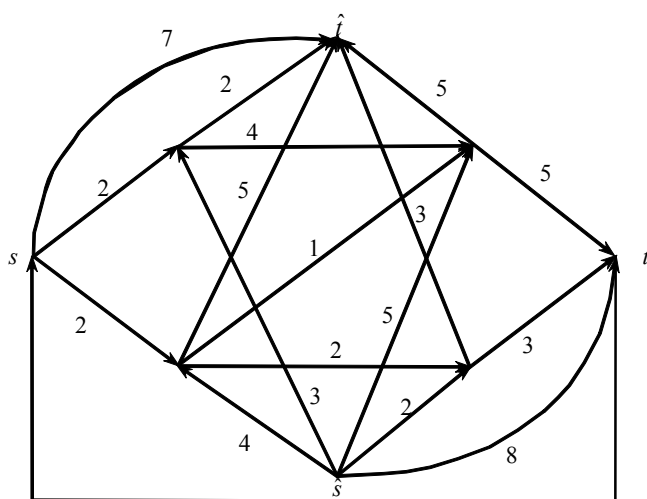
7-25 a

7-25 a

7-25 b



7-25 a



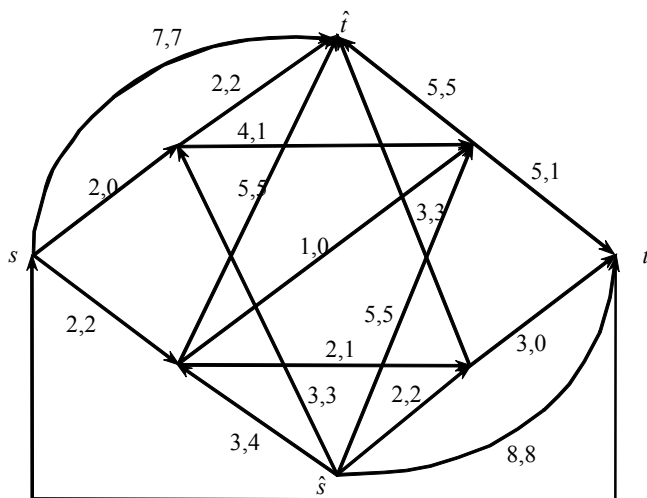
7-25 b

2

\tilde{G}

7-25 b

7-25 c



7-25 c

3

7-25 c

l

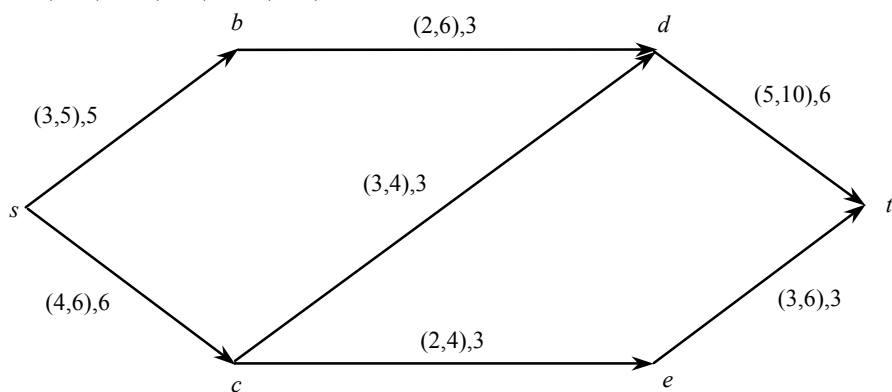
7.5

4

$$f(i, j) = b(i, j) + \frac{9}{4}f(i, j)$$

G

7-25 d



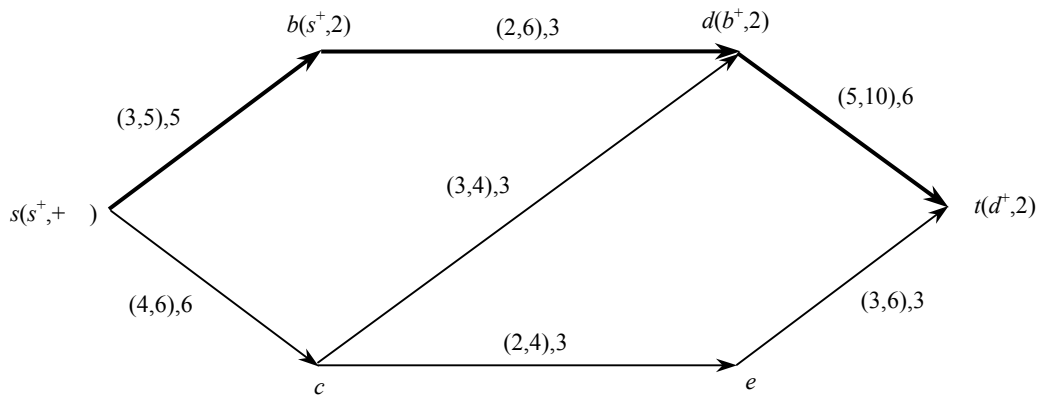
7-25 d

5

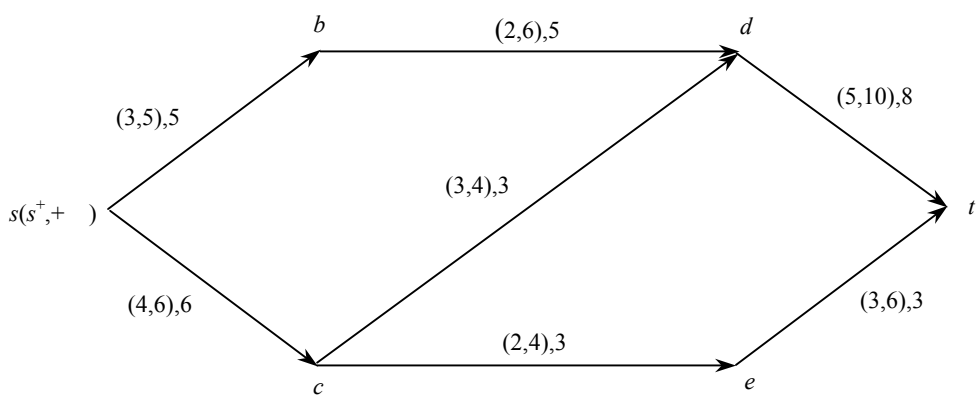
§ 7.6

7-25 d

7-25 e 7-25 f



7-25 e



7-25 f

7-25 f

s t

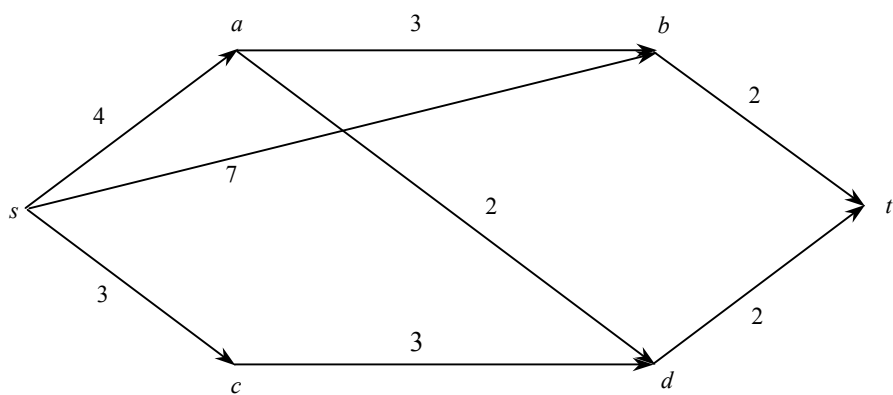
11

7-25

7.8

7-26

s t



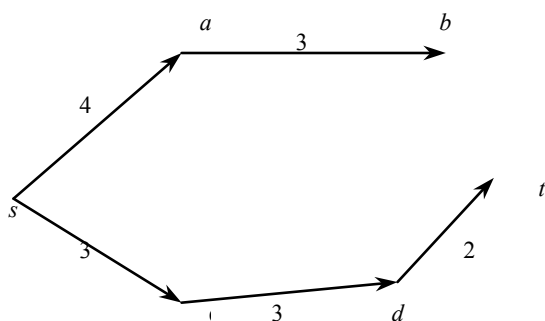
7-26

§ 7.8

Moore-Dijkstra

- 1 $\bar{S} = \{a, b, c, d, t\}$ $\pi(s) = 0$ $\pi(a) = 4$ $\pi(b) = 7$ $\pi(c) = 3$ $\pi(d) = \infty$ $\pi(t) = \infty$
- 2 $j = c$ $\bar{S} = \{a, b, d, t\}$
- 3 $\Gamma_j \cap \bar{S} = \{d\}$ $\pi(d) = \min(\infty, 3 + 3) = 6$
- 2 $j = a$ $\bar{S} = \{b, d, t\}$
- 3 $\Gamma_j \cap \bar{S} = \{b, d\}$ $\pi(b) = \min(7, 4 + 3) = 7$ $\pi(d) = \min(6, 6) = 6$
- 2 $j = d$ $\bar{S} = \{b, t\}$
- 3 $\Gamma_j \cap \bar{S} = \{t\}$ $\pi(t) = \min(\infty, 6 + 2) = 8$
- 2 $j = b$ $\bar{S} = \{t\}$
- 3 $\Gamma_j \cap \bar{S} = \{t\}$ $\pi(t) = \min(8, 7 + 2) = 8$
- 2 $j = t$ $\bar{S} = \{\emptyset\}$ $|\bar{S}| = 0$

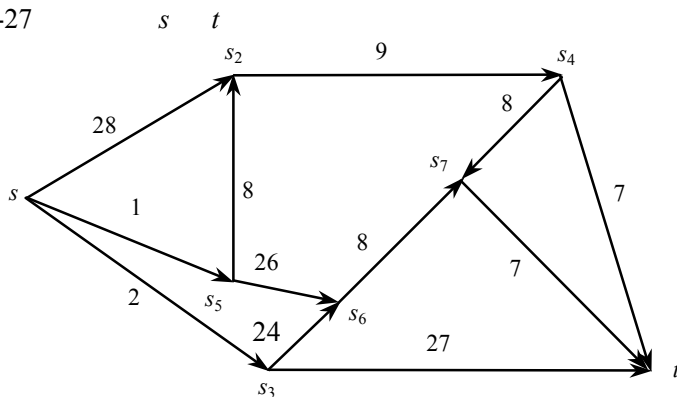
$s \quad t \quad \quad \quad 8 \quad \quad \quad s \quad c \quad d \quad t$
 7-26 a



7-26 a

7.9

7-27



7-27

解:

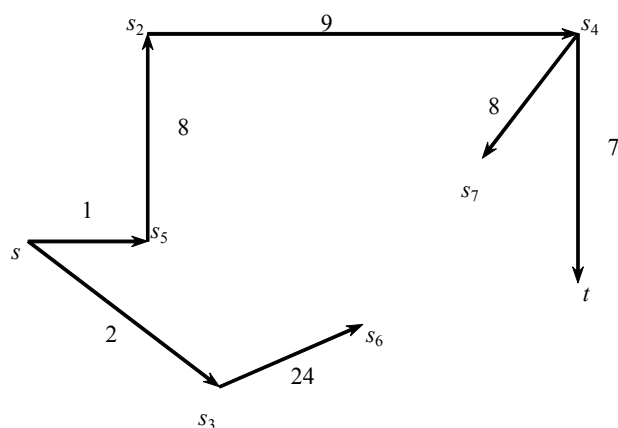
Moore-Dijkstra

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 \quad & \bar{S} = \{S_2, S_3, S_4, S_5, S_6, S_7, t\} \quad \pi(S) = 0 \quad \pi(S_2) = 28 \quad \pi(S_3) = 2 \quad \pi(S_5) = 1 \\
 & \pi(S_4) = \pi(S_6) = \pi(S_7) = \pi(t) = \infty \\
 2 \quad & j = S_5 \quad \bar{S} = \{S_2, S_3, S_4, S_6, S_7, t\} \\
 3 \quad & \Gamma_j \cap \bar{S} = \{S_2, S_6\} \quad \pi(S_2) = \min\{28, 9\} = 9 \quad \pi(S_6) = \min\{\infty, 27\} = 27 \\
 2 \quad & j = S_3 \quad \bar{S} = \{S_2, S_4, S_6, S_7, t\} \\
 3 \quad & \Gamma_j \cap \bar{S} = \{S_6, t\} \quad \pi(S_6) = \min\{27, 2 + 24\} = 26 \quad \pi(t) = \min\{\infty, 2 + 27\} = 29 \\
 2 \quad & j = S_2 \quad \bar{S} = \{S_4, S_6, S_7, t\} \\
 3 \quad & \Gamma_j \cap \bar{S} = \{S_4\} \quad \pi(S_4) = \min\{\infty, 9 + 9\} = 18 \\
 2 \quad & j = S_4 \quad \bar{S} = \{S_6, S_7, t\} \\
 3 \quad & \Gamma_j \cap \bar{S} = \{S_7, t\} \quad \pi(S_7) = \min\{\infty, 18 + 8\} = 26 \quad \pi(t) = \min\{29, 18 + 7\} = 25 \\
 2 \quad & j = t \quad \bar{S} = \{S_6, S_7\} \\
 3 \quad & \Gamma_j \cap \bar{S} = \{\emptyset\} \\
 2 \quad & j = S_6 \quad \bar{S} = \{S_7\} \\
 3 \quad & \Gamma_j \cap \bar{S} = \{S_7\} \quad \pi(S_7) = \min\{26, 26 + 8\} = 26 \\
 2 \quad & j = S_7 \quad \bar{S} = \emptyset \quad |\bar{S}| = 0 \\
 & \quad \quad \quad s \quad t \quad \quad \quad \pi(t) = 25 \quad \quad \quad s \quad S_5 \quad S_2 \quad S_4 \quad t
 \end{aligned}$$

Moore-Dijkstra

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \pi(s) = 0 \quad \pi(s_2) = 9 \quad \pi(s_3) = 2 \quad \pi(s_4) = 18 \quad \pi(t) = 25 \quad \pi(s_7) = 26 \quad \pi(s_6) = 26 \quad \pi(s_5) = 1
 \end{aligned}$$

7-27 a

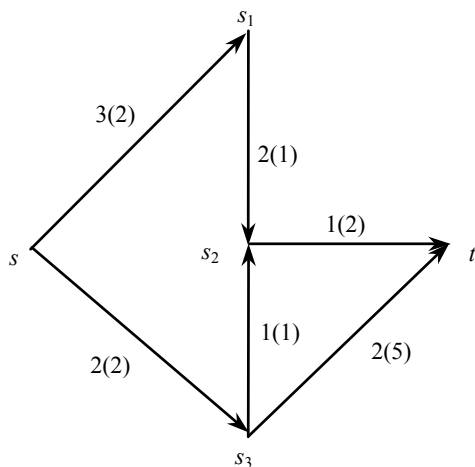


7-27 a

7.10

7-28

$f_v = 2$



7-28

解: $f_v = 2$

1 7-28 § 7.9 $s \quad t$
 $\mu(s, t) \quad s \quad s_3 \quad s_2 \quad t$

$$d(s, s_3) + d(s_3, s_2) + d(s_2, t) = 2 + 1 + 2 = 5$$

$$2 \quad \mu(s, t) \quad \not\leq$$

$$\not\leq \min\{C(s, s_3), C(s_3, s_2), C(s_2, t)\} = \min\{2, 2, 1\} = 1$$

$$\mu(s, t) \quad \tilde{f}$$

$$C(s, s_3) \leftarrow C(s, s_3) - \not\leq = 2 - 1 = 1$$

$$C(s_3, s_2) \leftarrow C(s_3, s_2) - \not\leq = 1 - 1 = 0$$

$$C(s_2, t) \leftarrow C(s_2, t) - \not\leq = 1 - 1 = 0$$

∞

$$d(s_3, s_2) = \infty \quad d(s_2, t) = \infty$$

$$3 \quad \mu(s, t) \quad i \quad j \quad (j, i)$$

$$C(s_3, s) = \not\leq 1 \quad d(s_3, s) = -2$$

$$C(s_2, s_3) = \not\leq 1 \quad d(s_2, s_3) = -1$$

$$C(t, s_2) = \not\leq 1 \quad d(t, s_2) = -2$$

7-28 a

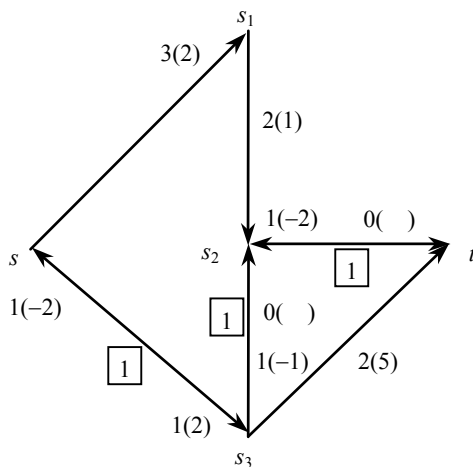
7-28 a

1 7-28 a

$s \quad s_1 \quad s_2 \quad s_3 \quad t$

$$d(s, s_1) + d(s_1, s_2) + d(s_2, s_3) + d(s_3, t) = 2 + 1 - 1 + 5 = 7$$

$$2 \quad f_0 = \min\{C(s, s_1), C(s_1, s_2), C(s_2, s_3), C(s_3, t)\} = \min\{3, 2, 1, 2\} = 1$$



7-28 a

$s_2 \quad s_3$

1

$s_3 \quad s_2$

1

$s_3 \quad s_2$

$$C(s, s_1) \leftarrow C(s, s_1) - f_0 = 3 - 1 = 2$$

$$C(s_1, s_2) \leftarrow C(s_1, s_2) - f_0 = 2 - 1 = 1$$

$$C(s_2, s_3) \leftarrow C(s_2, s_3) - f_0 = 1 - 1 = 0$$

$$C(s_3, t) \leftarrow C(s_3, t) - f_0 = 2 - 1 = 1 \quad d(s_2, s_3) = \infty$$

$$3 \quad C(s_1, s) = f_0 = 1 \quad d(s_1, s) = -2$$

$$C(s_2, s_1) = f_0 = 1 \quad d(s_2, s_1) = -1$$

$$C(s_3, s_2) = 0 + f_0 = 1 \quad d(s_3, s_2) = 1$$

$$C(t, s_3) = f_0 = 1 \quad d(t, s_3) = -5$$

7-28 b

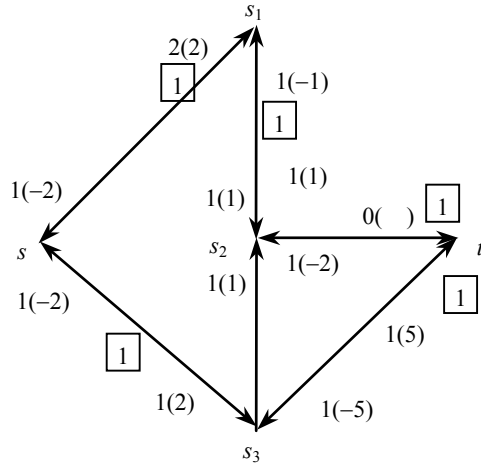
7-28 b

s

t

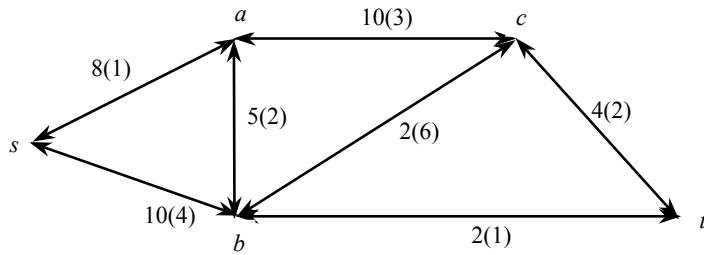
$$f_v = 2$$

$$1 \times 5 + 1 \times 7 = 12$$



7-28 b

7.11 7-29



7-29

解: 1 7-29 7.9 Moore-Dijkstra $s \quad t$
 $\mu(s, t) \quad s \quad a \quad b \quad t$

$$d(s, a) + d(a, b) + d(b, t) = 1 + 2 + 1 = 4$$

$$\tilde{f} = \min\{C(s, a), C(a, b), C(b, t)\} = \min\{8, 5, 7\} = 5$$

$$\mu(s, t) \quad \tilde{f}$$

$$C(s, a) \leftarrow C(s, a) - \tilde{f} = 8 - 5 = 3$$

$$C(a, b) \leftarrow C(a, b) - \tilde{f} = 5 - 5 = 0 \quad d(a, b) = \infty$$

$$C(b, t) \leftarrow C(b, t) - \tilde{f} = 7 - 5 = 2$$

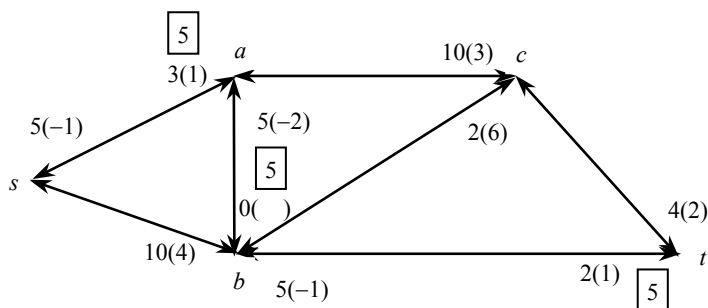
$$3 \quad \mu(s, t) \quad i \quad j \quad (j, i),$$

$$C(a, s) = 5 \quad d(a, s) = -1$$

$$C(b, a) = 5 \quad d(b, a) = -2$$

$$C(t, b) = 5 \quad d(t, b) = -1$$

7-29 a



7-29 a

7-29 a

1 7-29 a $s \quad b \quad t$

$$d(s, b) + d(b, t) = 4 + 1 = 5$$

$$2 \quad f_0 = \min \{C(s, b), C(b, t)\} = 2$$

$$C(s, b) \leftarrow C(s, b) - f_0 = 10 - 2 = 8$$

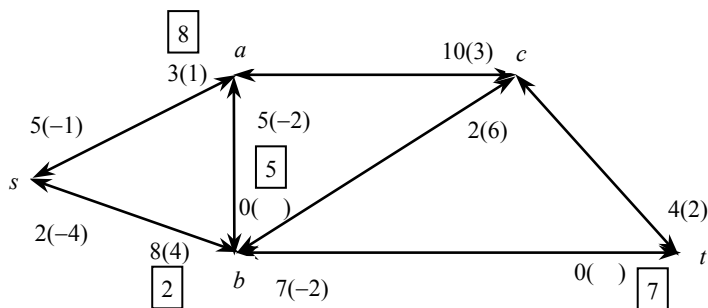
$$C(b, t) \leftarrow C(b, t) - f_0 = 2 - 2 = 0 \quad d(b, t) = \infty$$

$$3 \quad C(b, s) = f_0 = 2 \quad d(b, s) = -4$$

$$C(t, b) = f_0 = 2 = 2 \quad d(t, b) = -1$$

7-29 a

7-29 b



7-29 b

7-29 b

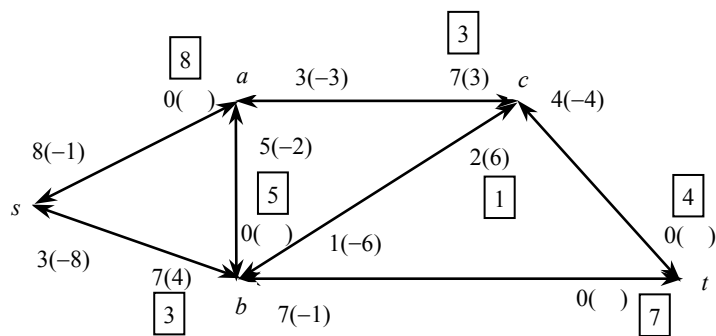
1

$s \quad a \quad c \quad t$

$$d(s, a) + d(a, c) + d(c, t) = 1 + 3 + 2 = 6$$

$$2 \quad f = \min\{C(s, a), C(a, c), C(c, t)\} = \min\{3, 10, 4\} = 3$$

(



7-29 d

7-29 d

s t

s t

11

$$5 \times 4 + 2 \times 5 + 3 \times 6 + 1 \times 7 = 55$$

第八章 线性规划

一、内容提要

1947

G.B.Dantzig

(一) 线性规划问题的数学模型

$$y = c_1 x_1 + c_2 x_2 + \cdots + c_r x_r \quad (8.1)$$

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11} x_1 + a_{12} x_2 + \cdots + a_{1r} x_r &\leq \quad = \quad \geq \quad b_1 \\ a_{21} x_1 + a_{22} x_2 + \cdots + a_{2r} x_r &\leq \quad = \quad \geq \quad b_2 \\ &\quad \quad \quad \text{L L} \\ a_{m1} x_1 + a_{m2} x_2 + \cdots + a_{mr} x_r &\leq \quad = \quad \geq \quad b_m \\ x_i &\geq 0 \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad \cdots \quad r \end{aligned} \quad 8.1'$$

$$a_{ij} \quad b_i \quad c_j \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad m \quad j=1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad r \quad x_i$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad \min \quad y &= \sum c_i x_i & 8.2 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad \sum_{i=1}^r a_{1i} x_i &\leq \quad = \quad \geq \quad b_1 \\ &\sum_{i=1}^r a_{2i} x_i &= \quad \geq \quad b_2 \\ &\quad \quad \quad \text{L L} & 8.2' \end{aligned}$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^r a_{mi} x_i \leq \quad = \quad \geq \quad b_m$$

$$x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, r$$

定义 8.1

8.1

$$8.1'$$

$$8.2'$$

$$x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1$$

$$2, \dots, r$$

$$8.1$$

$$8.1'$$

注意:

(二) 线性规划问题的标准形式

$$8.2$$

$$8.2'$$

$$b_i$$

$$\max \quad y = \sum c_i x_i \quad 8.3$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum a_{1i} x_i = b_1$$

$$\sum a_{2i} x_i = b_2$$

$$\dots$$

$$8.3'$$

$$\sum a_{mi} x_i = b_m \quad x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, n$$

$$b_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, m$$

$$8.3$$

$$8.3'$$

$$1$$

$$k$$

$$a_{k1}x_1 + a_{k2}x_2 + \dots + a_{kr}x_r \leq b_k$$

$$x_{r+k} \geq 0$$

$$a_{k1}x_1 + a_{k2}x_2 + \dots + a_{kr}x_r + x_{r+k} = b_k$$

$$x_{r+k}$$

$$i$$

$$a_{i1}x_1 + a_{i2}x_2 + \dots + a_{ir}x_r \geq b_i$$

$$x_{r+i} \geq 0$$

$$a_{i1}x_1 + a_{i2}x_2 + \dots + a_{ir}x_r - x_{r+i} = b_i$$

注意:

0

2

$$y = \sum c_i x_i$$

-1

$$y' = -y = -\sum c_i x_i$$

3

b_i

$$a_{i1}x_1 + a_{i2}x_2 + \dots + a_{ir}x_r = b_i$$

-1

$b_i < 0$

$$-a_{i1}x_1 - a_{i2}x_2 - \dots - a_{ir}x_r = -b_i > 0$$

4

$$x_j - x_j' - x_j'' \leq 0$$

$$x_j = x_j' - x_j'' \quad x_j' \geq 0 \quad x_j'' \geq 0$$

$$x_j' \quad x_j''$$

$$x_j$$

8.2

8.2'

$$\max \quad y = \sum c_i x_i \quad 8.4$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum a_{1i} x_i \pm x_{r+1} = b_1$$

$$\sum a_{2i} x_i \pm x_{r+2} = b_2$$

L L

8.4'

$$\sum a_{mi} x_i \pm x_{r+m} = b_m$$

$$x_i \geq 0 \quad x_{r+j} \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, L \quad r \quad j=1, 2, \dots, L \quad m$$

$$b_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, L \quad m$$

(三) 线性规划问题的几何意义

定义 8.2

8.1'

$$x_1 \quad x_2 \quad \dots \quad x_r$$

8.1

定义 8.3

1

2

3

4

注意:

定义 8.4

180°

定义 8.5

x

x

定义 8.6

r

r

$$a_{i1}x_1 + a_{i2}x_2 + \dots + a_{ir}x_r = b_i$$

r

$$a_{i1}x_1 + a_{i2}x_2 + \dots + a_{ir}x_r > b_i$$

$$a_{i1}x_1 + a_{i2}x_2 + \dots + a_{ir}x_r < b_i$$

$$a_{i1}x_1 + a_{i2}x_2 + \dots + a_{ir}x_r = b_i$$

r

m

r

m

r

$$a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \dots + a_{1r}x_r = b_1$$

$$a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \dots + a_{2r}x_r = b_2$$

$L \quad L$

$$a_{m1}x_1 + a_{m2}x_2 + \dots + a_{mr}x_r = b_m$$

$$x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, L \quad r$$

(四) 线性规划问题的基本定理

定义 8.7	8.4	8.4'	$r+m$	r
0		$r+m$	r	0
	0			

定理 8.1	8.4	8.4'
定理 8.2	8.4	8.4'

(五) 线性规划问题的单纯形方法

1	
2	§ 8.8
3	
4	

5	3	4
---	---	---

(六) 线性规划问题的表格法

1	x_1	x_2	L	x_m	x_{m+1}	x_{m+2}	L	x_{r+m}	x_1	x_2	L
x_m		x_{m+1}	x_{m+2}	L	x_{r+m}						
2											
	$x_1 + v_1 \quad x_{m+1} + v_1 \quad x_{m+2} + L \quad + v_1 \quad x_{m+j} + L \quad + v_1 \quad x_{r+m} = w_1$ $x_2 + v_2 \quad x_{m+1} + v_2 \quad x_{m+2} + L \quad + v_2 \quad x_{m+j} + L \quad + v_2 \quad x_{r+m} = w_2$ $L \quad L$ $x_k + v_k \quad x_{m+1} + v_k \quad x_{m+2} + L \quad + v_k \quad x_{m+j} + L \quad + v_k \quad x_{r+m} = w_k$ $L \quad L$ $x_m + v_m \quad x_{m+1} + v_m \quad x_{m+2} + L \quad + v_m \quad x_{m+j} + L \quad + v_m \quad x_{r+m} = w_m$ $y + v_0 \quad x_{m+1} + v_0 \quad x_{m+2} + L \quad + v_0 \quad x_{m+j} + L \quad + v_0 \quad x_{r+m} = w_0$										

表 8-1

	v_{m+1}	v_{m+2}	L	v_{m+j}	L	v_{r+m}	
x_1	v_{1-m+1}	v_{1-m+2}	L	v_{1-m+j}	L	v_{1-r+m}	w_1
x_2	v_{2-m+1}	v_{2-m+2}	L	v_{2-m+j}	L	v_{2-r+m}	w_2
L	L	L	L	L	L	L	w_3
x_k	v_{k-m+1}	v_{k-m+2}	L	v_{k-m+j}	L	v_{k-r+m}	w_4
L	L	L	L	L	L	L	w_5
x_m	v_{m-m+1}	v_{m-m+2}	L	v_{m-m+j}	L	v_{m-r+m}	w_6
	v_{0-m+1}	v_{0-m+2}	L	v_{0-m+j}	L	v_{0-r+m}	w_0

3

8-1

x_{m+j} 0

$x_1 \quad x_2 \quad L \quad x_m$

$w_1/v_{1-m+j} \quad w_2/v_{2-m+j}$

L

w_m/v_{m-m+j}

w_k/v_{k-m+j}

x_k

x_{m+j}

v_{k-m+j}

$x_i \quad x_{m+j}$

$x_1 \quad L \quad x_{k-1} \quad x_{m+j}$

$x_{k+1} \quad L \quad x_m \quad x_{m+1} \quad L \quad x_{m+j-1} \quad L \quad x_k \quad x_{m+j+1} \quad L \quad x_{r+m}$

$x_1 \quad x_2 \quad L \quad x_{k-1} \quad x_{m+j}$

$x_{k+1} \quad L \quad x_m$

$x_{m+1} \quad L \quad x_{m+j-1} \quad L \quad x_k \quad x_{m+j+1} \quad L \quad x_{r+m}$

8-1

1

2

3

4

$v_{p-m+q} \quad p \quad k \quad q \quad j$

$v_{p-m+q} - v_{p-m+j} \frac{v_{k,m+q}}{v_{k,m+j}}$

$w_p \quad p \quad k$

$w_p - v_{p-m+j} \frac{w_k}{v_{k,m+j}}$

4

3 4

1

0

2

$$2 \qquad x_i \geq 0 \qquad " \leq "$$

定义 8.8

$$\max \quad y = \sum c_i x_i$$

$$L \quad L \quad 8.32$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^r a_{mi} x_i \leq b_m$$

$$x_i \geq 0, i=1, 2, L, r$$

$$\min \quad z = \sum_{i=1}^m b_i y_i$$

$$\text{s.t} \quad \sum_{i=1}^m a_{i1} y_i \geq c_1$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^m a_{i2} y_i \geq c_2$$

$$L \quad L \quad 8.33$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^m a_{ir} y_i \geq c_r$$

$$y_i \geq 0, i=1, 2, L, m$$

8.33

8.32

8.32

定理 8.3

定理 8.4 8.32 8.33

$$x'_1, x'_2, L, x'_r \quad y'_1, y'_2, L, y'_m \quad 8.32 \quad 8.33$$

$$\sum_{j=1}^r c_j x'_j \leq \sum_{i=1}^m b_i y'_i$$

定理 8.5 $x'_1, x'_2, L, x'_r \quad y'_1, y'_2, L, y'_m$ 8.32

8.33

$$\sum_{i=1}^r c_i x'_i = \sum_{i=1}^m b_i y'_i$$

$$x'_1, x'_2, L, x'_r \quad 8.32$$

$$y'_1, y'_2, L, y'_m \quad 8.33$$

定理 8.6 8.32 8.33

8.6

推论

8.6

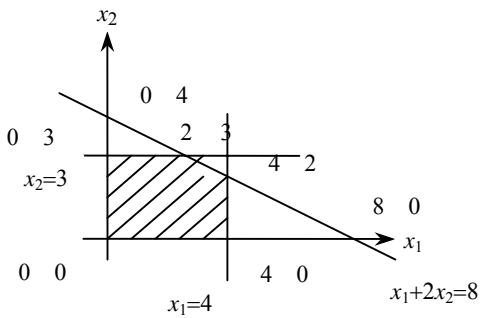
二、习题解答

8.1

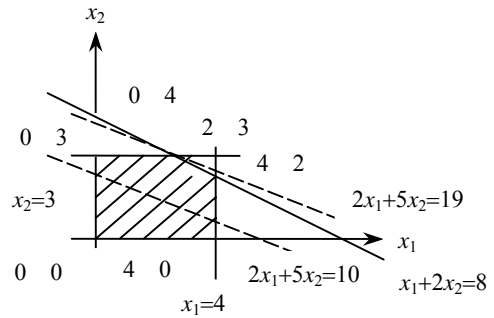
$$\begin{aligned} \text{a} \quad & \max \quad y=2x_1+5x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & x_1 \leq 4 \\ & x_2 \leq 3 \\ & x_1+2x_2 \leq 8 \\ & x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2 \end{aligned}$$

解:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & x_1x_2 & & 8-1 & & \\ & & & & y=2x_1+5x_2 & & \\ & 2x_1+5x_2 & & & & & \\ x_1x_2 & & 2x_1+5x_2=k & k & & 8-2 & \\ & & k & & & & \end{array}$$



8-1



8-2

8-2

$$2x_1+5x_2=19$$

2 3

y

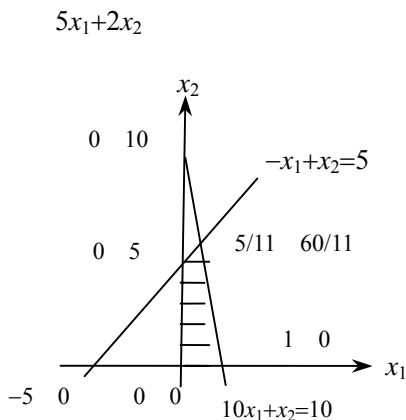
$$x_1=2 \quad x_2=3$$

19

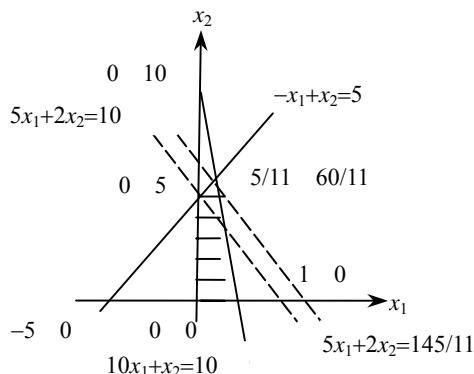
$$\begin{aligned} \text{b} \quad & \max \quad y=5x_1+2x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & -x_1+x_2 \leq 5 \\ & 10x_1+x_2 \leq 10 \\ & x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2 \end{aligned}$$

解:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & x_1x_2 & 8-3 \\ & & y=5x_1+2x_2 \end{array}$$



8-3



8-4

$x_1 x_2$

$5x_1 + 2x_2 = k$ k

8-4

8-4

$5x_1 + 2x_2 = 145/11$

$5/11$ $60/11$

y

$x_1 = 5/11$ $x_2 = 60/11$

$145/11$

c

max $y = 2x_1 + 2x_2$

s.t. $-x_1 + x_2 \leq 1$

$x_1 + x_2 \leq 3$

$x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2$

解:

$x_1 x_2$

8-5

$y = 2x_1 + 2x_2$

$2x_1 + 2x_2$

$x_1 x_2$

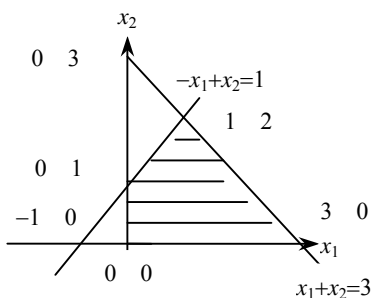
$2x_1 + 2x_2 = k$ k

8-6

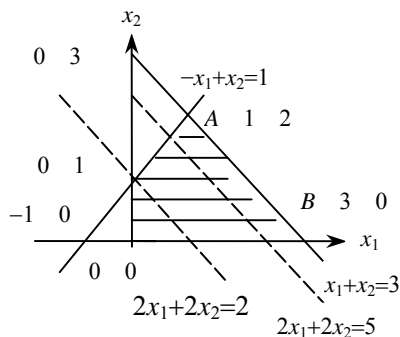
$2x_1 + 2x_2 = 6$

AB

k



8-5



8-6

AB

$y = 6$

8.2

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{a} \quad & \min \quad y = -3x_1 - 4x_2 + 2x_3 \\
 & \text{s.t.} \quad 3x_1 + 4x_2 + x_3 \leq 2 \\
 & \quad \quad 2x_1 - 3x_2 + x_3 \geq -4 \\
 & \quad \quad x_1 \leq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \leq 0 \\
 & \quad \quad y' = -y \\
 & \max \quad y' = 3x_1 + 4x_2 - 2x_3 \\
 & \text{s.t.} \quad 3x_1 + 4x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 2 \\
 & \quad \quad -2x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 + x_5 = 4 \\
 & \quad \quad x_1 \leq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \leq 0 \\
 & \quad \quad x_1 = x'_1 - x''_1 (x'_1 \geq 0, x''_1 \geq 0) \\
 & \quad \quad x_3 = x'_3 - x''_3 (x'_3 \geq 0, x''_3 \geq 0) \\
 & \quad \quad \max \quad y' = 3x'_1 - 3x''_1 + 4x_2 - 2x'_3 + 2x''_3 \\
 & \quad \quad \text{s.t.} \quad 3x'_1 - 3x''_1 + 4x_2 + x'_3 - x''_3 + x_4 = 2 \\
 & \quad \quad \quad -2x'_1 + 2x''_1 + 3x_2 - x'_3 + x''_3 + x_5 = 4 \\
 & \quad \quad \quad x'_1 \geq 0, x''_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x'_3 \geq 0, x''_3 \geq 0, x_4 \geq 0, x_5 \geq 0 \\
 \text{b} \quad & \min \quad y = 3x_1 - 4x_2 + x_3 \\
 & \text{s.t.} \quad -x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \leq 5 \\
 & \quad \quad x_1 - x_2 - 2x_3 \geq -6 \\
 & \quad \quad 5x_1 + x_2 - 3x_3 = 4 \\
 & \quad \quad x_i \geq 0 \quad i = 1 \ 2 \ 3 \\
 & \quad \quad y' = -y \\
 & \max \quad y' = -3x_1 + 4x_2 - x_3 \\
 & \quad \quad b_i \quad \quad \quad x_4, x_5 \\
 & \max \quad y' = -3x_1 + 4x_2 - x_3 \\
 & \text{s.t.} \quad -x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 5 \\
 & \quad \quad -x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 + x_5 = 6 \\
 & \quad \quad 5x_1 + x_2 - 3x_3 = 4 \\
 & \quad \quad x_i \geq 0 \quad i = 1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 4 \ 5
 \end{aligned}$$

8.3

$$\text{a} \quad \max \quad y = 3x_1 + 6x_2 - 2x_3$$

$$3x_1 + 4x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 2$$

$$x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 + x_5 = 1$$

$$y - 3x_1 - 6x_2 - 2x_3 = 0$$

$$0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 1$$

$$x_4 + 3x_1 + 4x_2 + x_3 = 2 \quad 1$$

$$x_5 + x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 = 1 \quad 2$$

$$y - 3x_1 - 6x_2 - 2x_3 = 0 \quad 3$$

$$x_2 \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad x_2 = \min\left\{\frac{1}{2} \quad \frac{1}{3}\right\} = \frac{1}{3}$$

$$0 \quad \frac{1}{3} \quad 0 \quad \frac{2}{3} \quad 0$$

$$x_4 + \frac{5}{3}x_1 - \frac{5}{3}x_3 - \frac{4}{3}x_5 = \frac{2}{3} \quad 1'$$

$$x_2 + \frac{1}{3}x_1 + \frac{2}{3}x_3 + \frac{1}{3}x_5 = \frac{1}{3} \quad 2'$$

$$y - x_1 + 2x_3 + 2x_5 = 2 \quad 3'$$

$$x_1 \quad 1' \quad 2' \quad x_2 = \min\left\{\frac{2}{5} \quad 1\right\} = \frac{2}{5}$$

$$\frac{2}{5} \quad \frac{1}{5} \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0$$

$$x_1 - x_3 + \frac{3}{5}x_4 - \frac{4}{5}x_5 = \frac{2}{5} \quad 1''$$

$$x_2 + x_3 - \frac{1}{5}x_4 + \frac{3}{5}x_5 = \frac{1}{5} \quad 2''$$

$$y + x_3 + \frac{3}{5}x_4 + \frac{6}{5}x_5 = \frac{12}{5} \quad 3''$$

$$x_3, x_4, x_5 \quad x_3 = x_4 = x_5 = 0 \quad \max y = \frac{12}{5}$$

$$\frac{2}{5} \quad \frac{1}{5} \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{b} \quad \min \quad & y = x_1 - x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & 4x_1 - 5x_2 \leq 10 \\ & 5x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 1 \\ & 3x_1 + 3x_2 \leq 12 \\ & x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2 \end{aligned}$$

$$x_3, x_4, x_5 \quad y' = -y$$

$$4x_1 - 5x_2 + x_3 = 10$$

$$5x_1 + 2x_2 + x_4 = 1$$

$$3x_1 + 3x_2 + x_5 = 12$$

$$y' + x_1 - x_2 = 0$$

$$x_i \geq 0, i=1, 2, 3, 4, 5$$

$$0 \quad 0 \quad 10 \quad 1 \quad 12$$

$$x_3 + 4x_1 - 5x_2 = 10$$

$$x_4 + 5x_1 + 2x_2 = 1$$

$$x_5 + 3x_1 + 3x_2 = 12$$

$$y' + x_1 - x_2 = 0$$

$$x_i \geq 0, i=1, 2, 3, 4, 5$$

8-2

8-3

表 8-2

	x_1	x_1	
x_3	4	-5	10
x_4	5	2	1
x_5	3	3	12
y'	1	-1	0

表 8-3

	x_1	x_4	
x_3	$\frac{33}{2}$	$\frac{5}{2}$	$\frac{25}{2}$
x_2	$\frac{5}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
x_5	$\frac{9}{2}$	$-\frac{3}{2}$	$\frac{21}{2}$
y'	$\frac{7}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \max & y' = \frac{1}{2} & \min & y = -\frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{25}{2} & 0 & \frac{21}{2} \end{array}$$

$$\text{c } \max \quad y = 10x_1 + 15x_2 + 12x_3$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad -5x_1 + 6x_2 + 15x_3 \leq 15$$

$$2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \geq 5$$

$$x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad 3$$

$$x_4, x_5$$

$$\max \quad y = 10x_1 + 15x_2 + 12x_3$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad -5x_1 + 6x_2 + 15x_3 + x_4 = 15$$

$$2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 - x_5 = 5$$

$$x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad y_1 \geq 0$$

y_1

$$\max \quad z = -y_1$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad -5x_1 + 6x_2 + 15x_3 + x_4 = 15$$

$$2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 - x_5 + y_1 = 5$$

$$x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad y_1 \geq 0$$

$$0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 15 \quad 0 \quad 5$$

8-4 8-5

表 8-4

	x_1	x_2	x_3	x_5	
x_4	-5	6	15	0	15
y_1	2	1	1	-1	5
z	-2	-1	-1	1	-5

表 8-5

	y_1	x_2	x_3	x_5	
x_4	$\frac{5}{2}$	$\frac{17}{2}$	$\frac{35}{2}$	$-\frac{5}{2}$	$\frac{55}{2}$
x_1	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{2}$
z	1	0	0	0	0

$$8-4 \quad y_1 \quad \frac{5}{2} \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad \frac{55}{2} \quad 0 \quad 0$$

$$\frac{5}{2} \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad \frac{55}{2} \quad 0 \quad 8-5 \quad y_1 \quad y$$

8-5

8-6

表 8-6

	x_2	x_3	x_5	
x_4	$\frac{17}{2}$	$\frac{35}{2}$	$-\frac{5}{2}$	$\frac{55}{2}$
x_1	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{2}$
y	-10	-7	-5	25

d min $y = x_2 - 3x_3 + 2x_5$

s.t. $x_1 + 3x_2 - 3x_3 + 2x_5 = 7$

$-2x_1 + 4x_3 + x_4 = 12$

$-4x_2 + 3x_3 + 8x_5 + x_6 = 10$

$x_i \geq 0, i = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6$

max $z = -\min y = -x_2 + 3x_3 - 2x_5$

s.t. $x_1 + 3x_2 - 3x_3 + 2x_5 = 7$

$-2x_1 + 4x_3 + x_4 = 12$

$-4x_2 + 3x_3 + 8x_5 + x_6 = 10$

$x_i \geq 0, i = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6$

y_1

max $z' = -y_1$

s.t. $x_1 + 3x_2 - 3x_3 + 2x_5 + y_1 = 7$

$-2x_1 + 4x_3 + x_4 = 12$

$-4x_2 + 3x_3 + 8x_5 + x_6 = 10$

$x_i \geq 0, i = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 \quad y_1 \geq 0$

0 0 0 12 0 10 7

8-7

8-8

表 8-7

	x_1	x_2	x_3	x_5	
x_4	-2	0	4	0	12
x_6	0	-4	3	8	10
y_1	1	3	-3	2	7
z'	-1	-3	3	-2	-7

表 8-8

	x_1	y_1	x_3	x_5	
x_4	-2	0	4	0	12
x_6	$\frac{4}{3}$	$\frac{4}{3}$	-1	$\frac{32}{3}$	$\frac{58}{3}$
x_2	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	-1	$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{7}{3}$
z'	0	1	0	0	0

8-8 y_1 0 $\frac{7}{3}$ 0 12 0 $\frac{58}{3}$ 0

$y_1=0$ 0 $\frac{7}{3}$ 0 12 0 $\frac{58}{3}$

0 $\frac{7}{3}$ 0 12 0 $\frac{58}{3}$

8-9 8-10 8-11

表 8-9

	x_1	x_3	x_5	
x_2	$\frac{1}{3}$	-1	$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{7}{3}$
x_4	-2	4	0	12
x_6	$\frac{4}{3}$	-1	$\frac{32}{3}$	$\frac{58}{3}$
z	$-\frac{1}{3}$	-2	$\frac{4}{3}$	$-\frac{7}{3}$

表 8-10

	x_1	x_4	x_5	
x_2	$-\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{16}{3}$
x_3	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	0	3
x_6	$\frac{5}{6}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{32}{3}$	$\frac{67}{3}$
z	$-\frac{4}{3}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{4}{3}$	$\frac{11}{3}$

表 8-11

	x_6	x_4	x_5	
x_2	$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{3}{10}$	$\frac{42}{15}$	$\frac{49}{5}$
x_3	$\frac{3}{5}$	$\frac{2}{5}$	$\frac{32}{5}$	$\frac{82}{5}$
x_1	$\frac{6}{5}$	$\frac{3}{10}$	$\frac{64}{5}$	$\frac{134}{5}$
z	$\frac{8}{5}$	$\frac{9}{10}$	$\frac{276}{15}$	$\frac{197}{5}$

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \text{8-11} \\
 \max \quad & z = \frac{197}{5} \quad \min \quad y = -\frac{197}{5} \\
 & \frac{134}{5} \quad \frac{49}{5} \quad \frac{82}{5} \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \\
 \text{e} \quad & \min \quad y = 2x_1 - 3x_2 + 6x_3 + x_4 - 2x_5 \\
 & \text{s.t.} \quad 2x_1 - 3x_2 + x_3 + 3x_4 - x_5 = 3 \\
 & \quad \quad x_1 + x_2 - 2x_3 + 9x_4 = 4 \\
 & \quad \quad x_i \geq 0, i = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
 \end{aligned}$$

解:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \max \quad & z = -\min \quad y = -2x_1 + 3x_2 - 6x_3 - x_4 + 2x_5 \\
 \text{s.t.} \quad & 2x_1 - 3x_2 + x_3 + 3x_4 - x_5 = 3 \\
 & x_1 + x_2 - 2x_3 + 9x_4 = 4 \\
 & x_i \geq 0, i = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
 \end{aligned}$$

$$y_1 \quad y_2$$

max

$z'=-y_1+y_2$

s.t.

$2x_1-3x_2+x_3+3x_4-x_5+y_1=3$

$x_1+x_2-2x_3+9x_4+y_2=4$

$x_i\geq 0,i=1,2,3,4,5\quad y_j\geq 0,j=1,2$

0000034

8-12

8-13

8-14

100

$\frac{1}{3}$

0

8-15

表 8-12

	x_1	x_2	x_3	x_4	x_5	
y_1	2	-3	1	3	-1	3
y_2	1	1	-2	9	0	4
z'	-3	2	1	-12	1	-7

表 8-13

	x_1	x_2	x_3	y_1	x_5	
y_1	$\frac{5}{3}$	$-\frac{10}{3}$	$\frac{5}{3}$	$-\frac{1}{3}$	-1	$\frac{5}{3}$
x_4	$\frac{1}{9}$	$\frac{1}{9}$	$-\frac{2}{9}$	$\frac{1}{9}$	0	$\frac{4}{9}$
z'	$-\frac{5}{3}$	$\frac{10}{3}$	$-\frac{5}{3}$	$\frac{4}{3}$	1	$-\frac{5}{3}$

表 8-14

	y_1	x_2	x_3	y_2	x_5	
x_1	$\frac{3}{5}$	-2	1	$-\frac{1}{5}$	$-\frac{3}{5}$	1
x_4	$-\frac{1}{15}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	$-\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{2}{15}$	$\frac{1}{15}$	$\frac{1}{3}$
z'	1	0	0	1	0	0

表 8-15

	x_2	x_3	x_5	
x_1	-2	1	$-\frac{3}{5}$	1
x_4	$\frac{1}{3}$	$-\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{15}$	$\frac{1}{3}$
z	$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{13}{3}$	$-\frac{13}{15}$	$-\frac{7}{3}$

表 8-16

	x_2	x_3	x_4	
x_1	1	-2	9	4
x_5	5	-5	15	5
z	$\frac{41}{3}$	0	13	2

8-16

$$\max \quad z=2 \quad \min \quad y=-2$$

$$4 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 5$$

8.4

A

$$1 \quad 1 \quad 0.7 \quad B \quad 1$$

B

3

100 000

$$A \quad x_1 \quad B \quad x_2$$

$$\max \quad y = 1.7^3 x_1 + 3 \times 1.7 x_2 = 4.913 x_1 + 5.1 x_2$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad x_1 + x_2 = 100\,000$$

$$x_i \geq 0, i = 1, 2$$

$$x_1 = 0 \quad x_2 = 100\,000$$

$$\max \quad y = 510\,000$$

8.5

A

B

A

200

B

100

A

150

50

10

B

60

40

20

30 000

13 000

5000

A

x_1

B

x_2

y

$$\max \quad y = 200 x_1 + 100 x_2$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad 150 x_1 + 60 x_2 \leq 30\,000$$

$$50 x_1 + 40 x_2 \leq 13\,000$$

$$10 x_1 + 20 x_2 \leq 5000$$

$$x_i \geq 0, i = 1, 2$$

x_3

x_4

x_5

$$150x_1+60x_2+x_3=30\,000$$

$$50x_1+40x_2+x_4=13\,000$$

$$10x_1+20x_2+x_5=5000$$

$$y-200x_1-100x_2=0$$

$$x_i\geq 0,i=1,2,3,4,5$$

8-17 8-18 8-19

表 8-17

	x_1	x_2	
x_3	150	60	30000
x_4	50	40	13000
x_5	10	20	5000
y	-200	-100	0

表 8-18

	x_3	x_2	
x_1	$\frac{1}{150}$	$\frac{2}{5}$	200
x_4	$-\frac{1}{3}$	20	3000
x_5	$-\frac{1}{15}$	16	3000
y	$\frac{4}{3}$	-20	40000

表 8-19

	x_3	x_4	
x_1	$\frac{1}{75}$	$-\frac{1}{50}$	140
x_2	$-\frac{1}{60}$	$\frac{1}{20}$	150
x_5	$\frac{1}{5}$	$-\frac{4}{5}$	600
y	1	1	43000

8-19

x_3 x_4

43 000

140 150 0 0 600

A 140 B 150

43 000

8.6

a $\max \quad y = -4x_1 - 3x_2$

s.t. $2x_1 + x_2 \geq 25$

$x_1 + 3x_2 \geq 30$

$x_1 + x_2 \geq 20$

解: $x_3 \quad x_4, x_5$

$2x_1 + x_2 - x_3 = 25$

$x_1 + 3x_2 - x_4 = 30$

$x_1 + x_2 - x_5 = 20$

$y + 4x_1 + 3x_2 = 0$

$y_1 \quad y_2 \quad y_3$

$\max \quad z = -y_1 + y_2 + y_3$

s.t. $2x_1 + x_2 - x_3 + y_1 = 25$

$x_1 + 3x_2 - x_4 + y_2 = 30$

$x_1 + x_2 - x_5 + y_3 = 20$

$0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 25 \quad 30 \quad 20$

$8-20 \quad 8-21 \quad 8-22 \quad 8-23$

表 8-20

	x_1	x_2	x_3	x_4	x_5	
y_1	2	1	-1	0	0	25
y_2	1	3	0	-1	0	30
y_3	1	1	0	0	-1	20
z	-4	-5	1	1	1	-75

表 8-21

	x_1	y_2	x_3	x_4	x_5	
y_1	$\frac{5}{3}$	$-\frac{1}{3}$	-1	$\frac{1}{3}$	0	15
x_2	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	0	$-\frac{1}{3}$	0	10
y_3	$\frac{2}{3}$	$-\frac{1}{3}$	0	$\frac{1}{3}$	-1	10
z	$-\frac{7}{3}$	$\frac{5}{3}$	$-\frac{2}{3}$	1	1	-25

表 8-22

	y_1	y_2	x_3	x_4	x_5	
x_1	$\frac{3}{5}$	$-\frac{1}{5}$	$-\frac{3}{5}$	$\frac{1}{5}$	0	9
x_2	$-\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{2}{5}$	$\frac{1}{5}$	$-\frac{2}{5}$	0	7
y_3	$-\frac{2}{5}$	$-\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{2}{5}$	$\frac{1}{5}$	-1	4
z	$\frac{7}{5}$	$\frac{6}{5}$	$-\frac{2}{5}$	$-\frac{1}{5}$	1	-4

表 8-23

	y_1	y_2	x_3	y_3	x_5	
x_1	1	0	-1	-1	1	5
x_2	-1	0	1	2	-2	15
x_4	-2	-1	2	5	-5	20
z	1	1	0	1	0	0

8-23

$y_1 \quad y_2 \quad y_3$

5 15 0 20 0 0

0 0

$y_1 = y_2 = y_3 = 0$

5 15 0 20 0

5 15 0 20 0

8-23

8-23

$y_1 \quad y_2 \quad y_3$

8-23

8-24

表 8-24

	X_3	x_5	
x_1	-1	1	5
x_2	1	-2	15
x_4	2	-5	20
y	1	2	-65

8-24

$x_3 \quad x_5$

-65

5 15 0 20 0

b min $y = -2x_1 - x_2 - x_3$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{s.t.} \quad & 4x_1 + 6x_2 + 3x_3 \leq 8 \\ & x_1 - 9x_2 + x_3 \leq -3 \\ & -2x_1 - 3x_2 + 5x_3 \leq -4 \end{aligned}$$

解: $x_4, x_5, x_6 \quad y' = -y$

$$\begin{aligned} 4x_1 + 6x_2 + 3x_3 + x_4 &= 8 \\ -x_1 + 9x_2 - x_3 - x_5 &= 3 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 - 5x_3 - x_6 &= 4 \\ y' - 2x_1 - x_2 - x_3 &= 0 \\ x_i &\geq 0, i = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 \end{aligned} \quad 8-1$$

8-1

$$\begin{aligned} & y_1 \quad y_2 \\ \max \quad & z = -y_1 + y_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & 4x_1 + 6x_2 + 3x_3 + x_4 = 8 \\ & -x_1 + 9x_2 - x_3 - x_5 + y_1 = 3 \\ & 2x_1 + 3x_2 - 5x_3 - x_6 + y_2 = 4 \\ & x_i \geq 0, i = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 \quad y_i \geq 0, i = 1, 2 \end{aligned} \quad 8-2$$

8-2

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc} 0 & 0 & 0 & 8 & 0 & 0 & 3 & 4 \\ 8-25 & & 8-26 & & 8-27 & & & \end{array}$$

表 8-25

	x_1	x_2	x_3	x_5	x_6	
x_4	4	6	3	0	0	8
y_1	-1	9	-1	-1	0	3
y_2	2	3	-5	0	-1	4
z	-1	-1	2	6	11	-7

表 8-26

	y_2	x_2	x_3	x_5	x_6	
x_4	-2	0	1	30	2	0
y_1	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{21}{2}$	$-\frac{7}{2}$	-1	$-\frac{1}{2}$	5
x_1	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{2}$	$-\frac{5}{2}$	0	$-\frac{1}{2}$	2
z	$\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{21}{2}$	$\frac{7}{2}$	1	$\frac{1}{2}$	-5

表 8-27

	y_2	y_1	y_3	y_5	y	
x_4	-2	0	13	0	2	0
x_2	$\frac{1}{21}$	$\frac{2}{21}$	$-\frac{1}{3}$	$-\frac{2}{21}$	$-\frac{1}{21}$	$\frac{10}{21}$
x_1	$\frac{3}{7}$	$-\frac{1}{7}$	-2	$\frac{1}{7}$	$-\frac{3}{7}$	$\frac{9}{7}$
y'	1	1	0	0	0	0

8-27

$y_1 \quad y_2$

$\frac{9}{7} \quad \frac{10}{21} \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0$

$0 \quad 0$

$y_1 = y_2 = 0$

$\frac{9}{7} \quad \frac{10}{21} \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0$

1

$\frac{9}{7} \quad \frac{10}{21} \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0$

1

8-27

8-27

$y_1 \quad y_2$

1

8-27

8-28

8-29

表 8-28

	x_3	x_5	x_6	
x_4	1	30	2	0
x_2	$-\frac{1}{3}$	$-\frac{2}{21}$	$-\frac{1}{21}$	$\frac{10}{21}$
x_1	-2	$\frac{1}{7}$	$-\frac{3}{7}$	$\frac{9}{7}$
y'	$-\frac{16}{3}$	$\frac{4}{21}$	$-\frac{19}{21}$	$\frac{64}{21}$

表 8-29

	x_4	x_5	x_6	
x_3	$\frac{1}{13}$	0	$\frac{2}{13}$	0
x_2	$\frac{1}{39}$	$-\frac{2}{21}$	$-\frac{4}{273}$	$\frac{10}{21}$
x_1	$\frac{2}{13}$	$\frac{1}{7}$	$-\frac{11}{91}$	$\frac{9}{7}$
y'	$\frac{16}{39}$	$\frac{4}{21}$	$\frac{53}{273}$	$\frac{64}{21}$

8-29

$x_4 \quad x_5 \quad x_6$

$$\max \quad y' = \frac{64}{21}$$

$$\frac{9}{7} \quad \frac{10}{21} \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0$$

$$\min \quad y = -\max \quad y' = -\frac{64}{21}$$

8.7

$$\text{a} \quad \max \quad y = 5x_1 + 6x_2 - 4x_3 + 4x_4$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad x_1 + x_2 + 5x_3 - 5x_4 \leq 3$$

$$x_1 + x_2 - x_3 + x_4 \geq 4$$

$$-x_1 - 2x_2 - 3x_3 + 3x_4 \leq 1$$

$$x_i \geq 0, i = 1, 2, 3, 4$$

解:

$$\min \quad z = 3y_1 - 4y_2 + y_3$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad y_1 - y_2 - y_3 \geq 5$$

$$y_1 - y_2 - 2y_3 \geq 6$$

$$5y_1 + y_2 - 3y_3 \geq -4$$

$$-5y_1 - y_2 + 3y_3 \geq 4$$

$$y_4 \quad y_5 \quad y_6 \quad y_7 \quad z' = -z$$

$$\max \quad z' = -3y_1 + 4y_2 - y_3$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad y_1 - y_2 - y_3 - y_4 = 5$$

$$y_1 - y_2 - 2y_3 - y_5 = 6$$

$$5y_1 + y_2 - 3y_3 - y_6 = -4$$

$$-5y_1 - y_2 + 3y_3 - y_7 = 4$$

1

$y_8 \quad y_9 \quad y_{10}$

$$\max \quad X = -y_8 + y_9 + y_{10}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad y_1 - y_2 - y_3 - y_4 + y_8 = 5$$

$$y_1 - y_2 - 2y_3 - y_5 + y_9 = 6$$

$$-5y_1 - y_2 + 3y_3 + y_6 = 4$$

$$-5y_1 - y_2 + 3y_3 - y_7 + y_{10} = 4$$

$$0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 4 \quad 0 \quad 5 \quad 6 \quad 4$$

8-30

8-31

表 8-30

	y_1	y_2	y_3	y_4	y_5	y_7	
y_6	-5	-1	3	0	0	0	4
y_8	1	-1	-1	-1	0	0	5
y_9	1	-1	-2	-1	0	0	6
y_{10}	-5	-1	3	0	0	-1	4
x	-3	-3	0	-2	0	-1	0

表 8-31

	y_8	y_2	y_3	y_4	y_5	y_7	
y_6	5	-6	-2	-5	0	0	29
y_1	1	-1	-1	-1	0	0	5
y_9	1	0	-1	0	0	0	1
y_{10}	5	-6	-2	-5	0	-1	29
x	3	0	-6	-2	0	-1	15

8-31

b $\min \quad y=2 x_1+2 x_2$
s.t. $2 x_1+4 x_2 \geq 1$
 $x_1+2 x_2 \geq 1$
 $2 x_1+x_2 \geq 1$
 $x_i \geq 0, i=1,2$

$\max \quad z=y_1+y_2+y_3$
s.t. $2 y_1+y_2+2 y_3 \leq 2$
 $4 y_1+2 y_2+y_3 \leq 2$
 $y_i \geq 0 \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad 3$

$y_4 \quad y_5$
s.t. $2 y_1+y_2+2 y_3+y_4=2$
 $4 y_1+2 y_2+y_3+y_5=2$
 $z-y_1-y_2-y_3=0$

$$y_i \geq 0 \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5$$

$$0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 2$$

8-32 8-33 8-34 8-35

表 8-32

	y_1	y_2	y_3	
y_4	2	1	2	2
y_5	4	2	1	2
z	-1	-1	-1	0

表 8-33

	y_5	y_2	y_3	
y_4	$-\frac{1}{2}$	0	$\frac{3}{2}$	1
y_1	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
z	$\frac{1}{4}$	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$

表 8-34

	y_5	y_2	y_4	
y_3	$-\frac{1}{3}$	0	$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{2}{3}$
y_1	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{3}$
z	0	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	1

表 8-35

	y_5	y_1	y_4	
y_3	$-\frac{1}{3}$	0	$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{2}{3}$
y_2	$\frac{2}{3}$	2	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{2}{3}$
z	$\frac{1}{3}$	1	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{4}{3}$

8-31 $0 \quad \frac{2}{3} \quad \frac{2}{3} \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad \max \quad z = \frac{4}{3}$

$$\frac{1}{3} \quad \frac{1}{3} \quad \min \quad y = \frac{4}{3}$$

8.8

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & y = x_1 + 2x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & -2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \leq 2 \\ & -x_1 + x_2 - x_3 \leq 1 \\ & x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2, 3 \end{aligned}$$

证:

$$\begin{aligned} & x_4 \quad x_5 \\ & -2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 2 \\ & -x_1 + x_2 - x_3 + x_5 = 1 \\ & y - x_1 - 2x_2 = 0 \\ & x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2, 3, 4, 5 \end{aligned}$$

8-36 8-37 8-38 8-39

表 8-36

	x_1	x_2	x_3	
x_4	-2	1	1	2
x_5	-1	1	-1	1
y	-1	-2	0	0

表 8-37

	x_1	x_5	x_3	
x_4	-1	-1	2	1
x_2	-1	1	-1	1
y	-3	2	-2	2

表 8-38

	x_1	x_5	x_4	
x_3	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
x_2	$-\frac{3}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
y	-4	1	-1	3

表 8-39

	x_1	x_5	x_3	
x_4	-1	-1	2	1
X_2	-1	1	-1	1
y	-5	0	2	4

x_1

8.9

8.6

1

$$\max \quad y = \sum_{i=1}^n c_i x_i \quad 8.3$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum_{i=1}^n a_{1i} x_i = b_1$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_{2i} x_i = b_2$$

L L

8.3'

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_{mi} x_i = b_m$$

$$x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad n$$

$$b_i \geq 0 \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad m$$

$$\max \quad y = CX \quad 8.4$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad AX = b \quad 8.4'$$

$$X \geq 0$$

A 8.3'

$$X = (x_1 \quad x_2 \quad \text{L} \quad x_m \quad x_{m+1} \quad \text{L} \quad x_n)^T = \begin{bmatrix} X_B \\ X_N \end{bmatrix}$$

$$X_B = (x_1 \quad x_2 \quad \text{L} \quad x_m)^T \quad X_N = (x_{m+1} \quad \text{L} \quad x_n)^T$$

$$C = (c_1 \quad \text{L} \quad c_m \quad c_{m+1} \quad \text{L} \quad c_n) = (C_B \quad C_N) \quad C_B = (c_1 \quad \text{L} \quad c_m) \quad C_N = (c_{m+1} \quad \text{L} \quad c_n)$$

$$b = (b_1 \quad b_2 \quad \text{L} \quad b_m)^T \quad O = (0 \quad 0 \quad \text{L} \quad 0)$$

$$A = \begin{matrix} B & N \\ B & A & m \end{matrix}$$

$$\begin{matrix} B & N & A & n-m \end{matrix}$$

$$B = \begin{matrix} & P_1 & P_2 & \cdots & P_m \\ p_i & & & & \end{matrix} \quad N = \begin{matrix} & P_{m+1} & P_{m+2} & \cdots & P_n \\ & & & & \end{matrix}$$

$$(B \quad N) \begin{bmatrix} X_B \\ X_N \end{bmatrix} = b \quad 8.4'$$

$$BX_B = b - NX_N$$

B

 B^{-1}

$$X_B = B^{-1}b - B^{-1}NX_N = B^{-1}b - B^{-1}(P_{m+1} \quad P_{m+2} \quad \cdots \quad P_n) \cdot \begin{bmatrix} x_{m+1} \\ x_{m+2} \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= B^{-1}b - \sum_{j=m+1}^n B^{-1}P_j x_j$$

$$Qy = CX = (C_B \quad C_N) \begin{bmatrix} X_B \\ X_N \end{bmatrix} = C_B X_B + C_N X_N$$

$$y = C_B(B^{-1}b - B^{-1}NX_N) + C_N X_N$$

$$= C_B B^{-1}b + (C_N - C_B B^{-1}N)X_N$$

$$= C_B B^{-1}b + \left[(C_{m+1} \quad C_{m+2} \quad \cdots \quad C_n) - C_B B^{-1}(P_{m+1} \quad P_{m+2} \quad \cdots \quad P_n) \right] \begin{bmatrix} x_{m+1} \\ x_{m+2} \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= C_B B^{-1}b + \sum_{j=m+1}^n (C_j - C_B B^{-1}P_j)x_j$$

$$8.3 \quad 8.3'$$

$$\max \quad y = C_B B^{-1}b + \sum_{j=m+1}^n (C_j - C_B B^{-1}P_j)x_j \quad 8.5$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad X_B = B^{-1}b - \sum_{j=m+1}^n B^{-1}P_j x_j \quad 8.5'$$

$$8.5 \quad \begin{matrix} X_B & X_N \geq O \\ C_j - C_B B^{-1}P_j \leq 0 \end{matrix}$$

$$\sigma_j = C_j - C_B B^{-1}P_j \quad 8.6$$

 x_j

2 定理 8.6

8.32

8.33

8.32

8.33

$$\max y = CX \quad 8.7$$

$$\text{s.t. } AX \leq b \quad 8.7'$$

$$X \geq O$$

$$\min z = Yb \quad 8.8$$

$$\text{s.t. } YA \geq C \quad 8.8'$$

$$Y \geq O$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A & 8.32 & X = & x_1 & x_2 & \text{L} & x_r \end{array} \begin{array}{ccccccc} Y = & y_1 & y_2 & \text{L} & y_m & C = & (c_1 \ c_2 \text{L} \ c_r \\ b = (b_1 \ b_2 \text{L} \ b_m)^T & O = & 0 & 0 & \text{L} & 0 & \end{array}$$

8.7 8.7'

$$\text{Max } y' = CX + C_\alpha X_\alpha \quad 8.9$$

$$\text{s.t. } AX + I \cdot X_\alpha = b \quad 8.9'$$

$$X \geq 0 \quad X_\alpha \geq 0$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X_\alpha = & x_{r+1} & x_{r+2} & \text{L} & x_{r+m} \end{array} \begin{array}{ccccccc} C_\alpha = & C_{r+1} & C_{r+2} & \text{L} & C_{r+m} \\ C_\alpha = & C_{r+1} & C_{r+2} & \text{L} & C_{r+m} & = & 0 \ 0 \ \text{L} \ 0 \ I \end{array}$$

m

$$8.9 \quad 8.9' \quad \hat{X}^{(0)} \quad B$$

$$\hat{X}^{(0)} = \begin{bmatrix} X^* \\ X_\alpha^* \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X^* & 8.7 & 8.7' & & & & \\ 1 & 8.6 & 8.9 & 8.9' & x_j & \sigma_j \leq 0 & \end{array}$$

$$\sigma_j = C_j - C_B B^{-1} P_j \leq 0, \quad j=1 \ 2 \ \cdots \ r \ r+1 \ \cdots \ r+m$$

$$\sigma = (\sigma_1 \ \sigma_2 \ \text{L} \ \sigma_r \ \sigma_{r+1} \ \text{L} \ \sigma_{r+m})$$

$$\sigma = (C_1 \ C_2 \ \cdots \ C_r \ C_{r+1} \ \cdots \ C_{r+m}) - C_B B^{-1} (P_1 \ P_2 \ \text{L} \ P_r \ P_{r+1} \ \cdots \ P_{r+m}) \quad 8.10$$

0

$$\sigma_1 \ \sigma_2 \ \text{L} \ \sigma_r = C_1 \ C_2 \ \cdots \ C_r - C_B B^{-1} P_1 \ P_2 \ \cdots \ P_r \leq 0$$

$$A = B \ N = P_1 \ P_2 \ \text{L} \ P_r \ P_{r+1} \ P_{r+2} \ \text{L} \ P_{r+m}$$

$$C - C_B B^{-1} A \leq O$$

$$Y^{(0)} = C_B B^{-1}$$

$$Y^{(0)} A \geq C$$

$$Y^{(0)} \quad 8.8 \quad 8.8'$$

8.10

$$\sigma_{r+1} \ \sigma_{r+2} \ \text{L} \ \sigma_{r+m} = C_{r+1} \ \cdots \ C_{r+m} - C_B B^{-1} P_{r+1} \ \cdots \ P_{r+m} \leq 0 \quad 8.11$$

$$Q \quad C_{r+1} = C_{r+2} = L = C_{r+m} = 0$$

$$\therefore Y^{(0)} \geq 0$$

$$\therefore Y^{(0)} \quad 8.8 \quad 8.8' \quad Y^{(0)} = C_B B^{-1}$$

$$B$$

$$X_B = B^{-1} \cdot b$$

$$\therefore Y^{(0)} b = C_B B^{-1} b = C_B X_B$$

$$y' = CX + C_\alpha X_\alpha$$

$$1 \quad 8.4$$

$$y' = C_B X_B + C_N X_N$$

$$\therefore C_B X_B + C_N X_N = CX + C_\alpha X_\alpha$$

$$\hat{X}^{(0)} = \begin{bmatrix} X^* \\ X_\alpha^* \end{bmatrix} \quad \hat{X}^{(0)} = \begin{bmatrix} X_B^{(0)} \\ X_N^{(0)} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\therefore CX^* + C_\alpha X_\alpha^* = C_B X_B^{(0)} + C_N X_N^{(0)}$$

$$Q \quad C_\alpha = 0 \quad X_N^{(0)} = 0$$

$$\therefore CX^* = C_B X_B^{(0)} \quad X^*$$

$$X_B^{(0)} = B^{-1} b$$

$$\therefore Y^{(0)} b = C_B B^{-1} b = C_B X_B^{(0)} = CX^*$$

$$8.5$$

$$8.6 \quad .$$

推论:

$$\text{Max} \quad y = CX$$

$$\text{s.t} \quad AX \leq b$$

$$X \geq 0$$

$$X_\alpha = (x_{r+1}, x_{r+2}, \dots, x_{r+m})^T$$

$$\sigma_{r+1} \quad \sigma_{r+2} \quad L \quad \sigma_{r+m}$$

$$8.9 \quad 8.9'$$

$$8.6 \quad Y^{(0)} = C_B B^{-1} =$$

$$y_1 \quad y_2 \quad L \quad y_m)$$

$$8.11$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} \sigma_{r+1} & \sigma_{r+2} & \cdots & \sigma_{r+m} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} C_{r+1} & C_{r+2} & \cdots & C_{r+m} \end{pmatrix} - C_B B^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} P_{r+1} & P_{r+2} & \cdots & P_{r+m} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} C_{r+1} & C_{r+2} & \cdots & C_{r+m} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} P_{r+1} & P_{r+2} & \cdots & P_{r+m} \end{pmatrix} = I$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} \sigma_{r+1} & \sigma_{r+2} & \cdots & \sigma_{r+m} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} C_{r+1} & C_{r+2} & \cdots & C_{r+m} \end{pmatrix} - C_B B^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} P_{r+1} & P_{r+2} & \cdots & P_{r+m} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{pmatrix} - Y^{(0)} I$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & \cdots & y_m \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} L & \cdots & L & \cdots & L \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} -y_1 & -y_2 & \cdots & -y_m \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & \cdots & y_m \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\sigma_{r+1} & -\sigma_{r+2} & \cdots & -\sigma_{r+m} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$X_\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} x_{r+1} & x_{r+2} & \cdots & x_{r+m} \end{pmatrix}^T$$

$$\sigma_{r+1} \quad \sigma_{r+2} \quad \cdots \quad \sigma_n$$

第九章 动态规划

一、内容提要

Richard Bellman 1951

(一) 基本概念

1

定义 9.1

定义 9.2

Markov

Markov

定义 9.3

定义 9.4

2

3

$$k \quad T \quad w \quad h_k \quad w \quad w \quad k \quad T$$

$$f_k \quad w = \min \quad d \quad w \quad h_k \quad w \quad + f_{k-1} \quad h_k \quad w$$

$$k \quad k-1$$

注意:

(二) 动态规划应用举例

1

$$i \quad f_i \quad x_i \quad f_i \quad x_i \quad a \quad n \quad x_i$$

$$\max \quad y = \sum_{i=1}^n f_i(x_i)$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = a$$

$$x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, n$$

$$f_i \quad x_i \quad i=1, 2, \dots, n$$

$$n$$

$$F_k \quad x \quad x \quad k$$

$$F_1 \quad x = f_1 \quad x$$

$$F_k \quad x = \max_{0 \leq x_k \leq x} \{f_k \quad x_k + F_{k-1} \quad x - x_k\} \quad k=2, 3, \dots, n$$

$$0 \leq x \leq a$$

$$F_n \quad a \quad F_n \quad a$$

2

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & n & & D_1 & D_2 & \text{L} & D_n & & D_i \\ i=1 & 2 & \text{L} & n & & & & & & \\ & & & & D_i & & & & & \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & i & & D_i & & x_i & & c_i \\ a_i & C & A & & & & & & \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & R = \prod_{i=1}^n r_i(x_i) \\ \text{s.t.} & \sum_{i=1}^n c_i x_i \leq C \\ & \sum_{i=1}^n a_i x_i \leq A \\ & x_i \geq 1 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} q_i & u^{(i)} & v^{(i)} & & i & & u^{(i)} & & v^{(i)} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{cases} q_1(u^{(1)}, v^{(1)}) = \max_{1 \leq x_1 \leq \zeta_1} r_1 x_1 \\ q_k(u^{(k)}, v^{(k)}) = \max_{1 \leq x_k \leq \zeta_k} \left\{ r_k x_k - q_{k-1}(u^{(k)} - c_k x_k, v^{(k)} - a_k x_k) \right\} \end{cases}$$

$$\zeta_k = \min \left\{ \left\lceil \frac{u^{(k)}}{c_k} \right\rceil, \left\lceil \frac{v^{(k)}}{a_k} \right\rceil \right\}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} q_1 & u^{(1)} & v^{(1)} & & q_2 & u^{(2)} & v^{(2)} & \text{L} & q_k & u^{(k)} & v^{(k)} & & q_n & C & A \end{array}$$

3

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & & & & & a \text{ kg} \\ n & & & n & & 1 & 2 & \text{L} & n & & i \\ & a_i \text{ kg} & & c_i & i=1 & 2 & \text{L} & n & & & \\ n & & & & i & & & & x_i & & \end{array}$$

$$\max \quad R = \sum_{i=1}^n c_i x_i$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum_{i=1}^n a_i x_i \leq a$$

$$x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, n$$

$$f_k(y) = \max_{0 \leq x_k \leq \left\lfloor \frac{y}{a_k} \right\rfloor} \{c_k x_k + f_{k-1}(y - a_k x_k)\}$$

$$k=1, 2, \dots, n$$

$$\begin{cases} f_1(y) = \max_{0 \leq x_1 \leq \left\lfloor \frac{y}{a_1} \right\rfloor} c_1 x_1 \\ f_k(y) = \max_{0 \leq x_k \leq \left\lfloor \frac{y}{a_k} \right\rfloor} \{c_k x_k + f_{k-1}(y - a_k x_k)\} \end{cases}$$

$$f_1(y) = f_2(y) = \dots = f_n(y) \quad x_1 = y, x_2 = y, \dots, x_n = y$$

$$f_n(a)$$

注意:

$$1 \quad \quad \quad "$$

$$b \quad i \quad v_i$$

$$2$$

$$4$$

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} c_1 & c_2 & \dots & c_n \\ d_{ij} & c_i & c_j \end{bmatrix}$$

$$i, j=1, 2, \dots, n$$

$$n$$

$$f_k(c_i, S) = c_i + k \cdot S$$

$$c_1$$

$$f_k(c_i, S) = \min_{c_j} [d_{ij} + f_{k-1}(c_j, S - c_j)]$$

$$S$$

$$c_i$$

$$c_1$$

$$f \ 3 \ \Phi = 5$$

$$f \ 4 \ \Phi = 3$$

$$f \ 5 \ \Phi = 5$$

2 S

$$f \ 2 \ 3 = d_{23} + f \ 3 \ \Phi = 10$$

$$f \ 2 \ 4 = d_{24} + f \ 4 \ \Phi = 7$$

$$f \ 2 \ 5 = d_{25} + f \ 5 \ \Phi = 8$$

$$f \ 3 \ 2 = d_{32} + f \ 2 \ \Phi = 5$$

$$f \ 3 \ 4 = d_{34} + f \ 4 \ \Phi = 5$$

$$f \ 3 \ 5 = d_{35} + f \ 5 \ \Phi = 6$$

$$f \ 4 \ 2 = d_{42} + f \ 2 \ \Phi = 2$$

$$f \ 4 \ 3 = d_{43} + f \ 3 \ \Phi = 8$$

$$f \ 4 \ 5 = d_{45} + f \ 5 \ \Phi = 8$$

$$f \ 5 \ 2 = d_{52} + f \ 2 \ \Phi = 3$$

$$f \ 5 \ 3 = d_{53} + f \ 3 \ \Phi = 9$$

$$f \ 5 \ 4 = d_{54} + f \ 4 \ \Phi = 4$$

3 S

$$f \ 2 \ 3 \ 4 = \min\{d_{23} + f \ 3 \ 4 \quad d_{24} + f \ 4 \ 3 \} = 10$$

$$f \ 2 \ 3 \ 5 = \min\{d_{23} + f \ 3 \ 5 \quad d_{25} + f \ 5 \ 3 \} = 11$$

$$f \ 2 \ 4 \ 5 = \min\{d_{24} + f \ 4 \ 5 \quad d_{25} + f \ 5 \ 4 \} = 7$$

$$f \ 3 \ 2 \ 4 = \min\{d_{32} + f \ 2 \ 4 \quad d_{34} + f \ 4 \ 2 \} = 4$$

$$f \ 3 \ 2 \ 5 = \min\{d_{32} + f \ 2 \ 5 \quad d_{35} + f \ 5 \ 2 \} = 4$$

$$f \ 3 \ 4 \ 5 = \min\{d_{34} + f \ 4 \ 5 \quad d_{35} + f \ 5 \ 4 \} = 5$$

$$f \ 4 \ 2 \ 3 = \min\{d_{42} + f \ 2 \ 3 \quad d_{43} + f \ 3 \ 2 \} = 8$$

$$f \ 4 \ 2 \ 5 = \min\{d_{42} + f \ 2 \ 5 \quad d_{45} + f \ 5 \ 2 \} = 6$$

$$f \ 4 \ 3 \ 5 = \min\{d_{43} + f \ 3 \ 5 \quad d_{45} + f \ 5 \ 3 \} = 9$$

$$f \ 5 \ 2 \ 3 = \min\{d_{52} + f \ 2 \ 3 \quad d_{53} + f \ 3 \ 2 \} = 9$$

$$f \ 5 \ 2 \ 4 = \min\{d_{52} + f \ 2 \ 4 \quad d_{54} + f \ 4 \ 2 \} = 3$$

$$f \ 5 \ 3 \ 4 = \min\{d_{53} + f \ 3 \ 4 \quad d_{54} + f \ 4 \ 3 \} = 9$$

4 S 3

$$f \ 2 \ 3 \ 4 \ 5 = \min\{d_{23} + f \ 3 \ 4 \ 5 \quad d_{24} + f \ 4 \ 3 \ 5 \quad d_{25} + f \ 5 \ 3 \ 4 \} = 10$$

$$f \ 3 \ 2 \ 4 \ 5 = \min\{d_{32} + f \ 2 \ 4 \ 5 \quad d_{34} + f \ 4 \ 2 \ 5 \quad d_{35} + f \ 5 \ 2 \ 4 \} = 4$$

$$f \ 4 \ 2 \ 3 \ 5 = \min\{d_{42} + f \ 2 \ 3 \ 5 \quad d_{43} + f \ 3 \ 2 \ 5 \quad d_{45} + f \ 5 \ 2 \ 3 \} = 7$$

$$f_{5234} = \min\{d_{52} + f_{234}, d_{53} + f_{324}, d_{54} + f_{423}\} = 8$$

$$5 \quad S \quad 4$$

$$f_{12345} = \min\{d_{12} + f_{2345}, d_{13} + f_{3245}, d_{14} + f_{4235}, d_{15} + f_{5234}\} = 5$$

$$1 \quad 3 \quad 5 \quad 4 \quad 2 \quad 1$$

$$1 \quad 5$$

$$1 \quad 3 \quad 5 \quad 4 \quad 2 \quad 1$$

$$9.2 \quad 100 \quad x$$

$$120x, 1.2x^2, 1.5x^2$$

解: $x_i \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad i \quad f_i(x_i) \quad i \quad x_i$

$$\min \quad y = f_1(x_1) + f_2(x_2) + f_3(x_3) = 120x_1 + 1.2x_2^2 + 1.5x_3^2$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = 100$$

$$x_i \geq 0, i = 1, 2, 3$$

$$F_k(x) \quad k \quad x$$

$$F_1(x) = f_1(x)$$

$$F_k(x) = \min_{0 \leq x_k \leq x} \{f_k(x_k) + F_{k-1}(x - x_k)\}, k = 2, 3$$

$$0 \leq x \leq 100$$

$$F_3(100)$$

$$F_1(x) = f_1(x) = 120x$$

$$F_2(x) = \min_{0 \leq x_2 \leq x} \{f_2(x_2) + F_1(x - x_2)\}$$

$$F_3(x) = \min_{0 \leq x_3 \leq x} \{f_3(x_3) + F_2(x - x_3)\}$$

$$x_1 = 10 \quad x_2 = 50 \quad x_3 = 40$$

$$F_3(100) = 6600$$

$$10 \quad 50 \quad 40$$

$$6600$$

$$9.3 \quad A \quad B$$

$$B$$

表 9-6

	A	B
	30%	50%
	50%	80%

解: $f_k(a, b) = k$ a b

$A = x$ $B = a - x$ $A = y$ $B = b - y$

$$= 862.8a + 587.5b \quad x=a \quad y=b$$

a b

$f_5(a,b)=862.8a+587.5b$

9-6 a

表 9-6 (a)

	1		2		3		4		5	
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
a	0	0.7a	0	0.7 ² a	0	0	0.7 ³ a	0	0.5	0.7 ³ a
b	0	0.5b	0	0.5 ² b	0	0.5 ³ b	0	0	0	0.5 ⁴ b

9.4

9-7

表 9-7

	0	1	2	3	4	5
0	0	3	7	9	12	13
1	0	5	10	11	11	11
2	0	4	6	11	12	12

解:

x_1, x_2, x_3 $1 \quad 2 \quad 3$

$f_1(x_1) \quad f_2(x_2) \quad f_3(x_3)$

$\max \quad Y=\sum_{i=1}^3 f_i(x_i)$

$\text{s.t.} \quad x_1+x_2+x_3=5$

$x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad 3$

$F_k \quad x$ x $k \quad k=1 \quad 2 \quad 3$ $x_k \quad x$

k

$$\begin{cases} F_1(x)=f_1(x) \\ F_k(x)=\max_{0 \leq x_k \leq x}\{f_k(x_k)+F_{k-1}(x-x_k) \quad k=2 \quad 3 \\ 0 \leq x \leq 5 \end{cases}$$

$$F_3(x) = \max\{f_3(x_3) + F_2(x - x_3)\}$$

$$F_3(5) = \max_{0 \leq x_3 \leq 5}\{f_3(x_3) + F_2(5 - x_3)\}$$

$$= \max\{f_3(0) + F_2(5) \quad f_3(1) + F_2(4) \quad f_3(2) + F_2(3) \quad f_3(3) + F_2(2) \quad f_3(4) + F_2(1) \\ f_3(5) + F_2(0)\}$$

$$F_2(x) = \max_{0 \leq x_2 \leq x}\{f_2(x_2) + F_1(x - x_2)\}$$

$$F_2(5) = \max_{0 \leq x_2 \leq 5}\{f_2(x_2) + F_1(5 - x_2)\}$$

$$= \max\{f_2(0) + F_1(5) \quad f_2(1) + F_1(4) \quad f_2(2) + F_1(3) \quad f_2(3) + F_1(2) \quad f_2(4) + F_1(1) \\ f_2(5) + F_1(0)\}$$

$$= \max\{13 \quad 17 \quad 19 \quad 18 \quad 14 \quad 11\} = 19$$

$$F_2(4) = \max_{0 \leq x_2 \leq 4}\{f_2(x_2) + F_1(4 - x_2)\}$$

$$= \max\{f_2(0) + F_1(4) \quad f_2(1) + F_1(3) \quad f_2(2) + F_1(2) \quad f_2(3) + F_1(1) \quad f_2(4) + F_1(0)\} \\ = \max\{12 \quad 14 \quad 17 \quad 14 \quad 11\} = 17$$

$$F_2(3) = \max_{0 \leq x_2 \leq 3}\{f_2(x_2) + F_1(3 - x_2)\}$$

$$= \max\{f_2(0) + F_1(3) \quad f_2(1) + F_1(2) \quad f_2(2) + F_1(1) \quad f_2(3) + F_1(0)\} \\ = \max\{9 \quad 12 \quad 13 \quad 11\} = 13$$

$$F_2(2) = \max\{f_2(0) + F_1(2) \quad f_2(1) + F_1(1) \quad f_2(2) + F_1(0)\}$$

$$= \max\{7 \quad 8 \quad 10\} = 10$$

$$F_2(1) = \max\{f_2(0) + F_1(1) \quad f_2(1) + F_1(0)\}$$

$$= \max\{3 \quad 5\} = 5$$

$$F_2(0) = 0$$

$$F_3(5) = \max\{19 \quad 21 \quad 19 \quad 21 \quad 17 \quad 12\} = 21$$

$$F_3(5) = 21 \quad x_3 = 1 \quad x_2 = 2 \quad x_1 = 2 \quad x_3 = 3 \quad x_2 = 2 \quad x_1 = 0$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} 2 & 2 & 1 \\ & 2 & 3 \end{array}$$

$$9.5 \quad 1$$

$$9-8 \quad a \quad b \quad 1$$

表 9-8 (a) 概率表

<div></div>	1	2	3	4
1	0.70	0.50	0.70	0.60
2	0.80	0.70	0.90	0.70
3	0.90	0.80	0.95	0.90

表 9-8 (b) 费用表

<div></div>	1	2	3	4
1	1	2	1	2
2	2	4	3	3
3	3	5	4	4

解: $i \qquad x_i \qquad r_i \quad x_i \qquad c_i \quad x_i$

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & R = \sum_{i=1}^4 r_i(x_i) \\ \text{s.t} \quad & \sum_{i=1}^4 c_i(x_i) \leq 10 \\ & x_i \geq 1 \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} q_k \quad u^k \qquad k \qquad u^k \\ \begin{cases} q_1(u^{(1)}) = \max_{0 \leq x_1 \leq \zeta} r_1(x_1), \quad 0 \leq x_1 \leq \zeta \\ q_k(u^{(k)}) = \max_{1 \leq x_k \leq \zeta_k} \{r_k(x_k)q_{k-1}(u^{(k)} - c_k(x_k))\}, \text{ 式中: } \zeta_k = \min\{3, u^{(k)} \geq c_k(x_k)\} \end{cases} \\ \therefore \quad q_4(10) = \max_{0 \leq x_4 \leq 3} \{r_4(x_4) \cdot q_3(10 - c_4(x_4))\} \\ \qquad \qquad \qquad = \max\{r_4(1)q_3(8) \quad r_4(2)q_3(7) \quad r_4(3)q_3(6)\} \\ q_3(8) = \max_{0 \leq x_3 \leq 3} \{r_3(x_3) \cdot q_2(8 - c_3(x_3))\} \\ \qquad \qquad \qquad = \max\{r_3(1)q_2(7) \quad r_3(2)q_2(5) \quad r_3(3)q_2(4)\} \\ \qquad \qquad \qquad = \{0.56 \quad 0.72 \quad 0.665\} = 0.72 \\ q_3(7) = \max_{0 \leq x_3 \leq 3} \{r_3(x_3) \cdot q_2(7 - c_3(x_3))\} \\ \qquad \qquad \qquad = \max\{r_3(1)q_2(6) \quad r_3(2)q_2(4) \quad r_3(3)q_2(3)\} \\ \qquad \qquad \qquad = \max\{0.56 \quad 0.45 \quad 0.475\} = 0.63 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 q_3(6) &= \max_{0 \leq x_3 \leq 3} \{r_3(x_3) \cdot q_2(6 - c_3(x_3))\} \\
 &= \max \{r_3(1)q_2(5) \quad r_3(2)q_2(3) \quad r_3(3)q_2(2)\} \\
 &= \max \{0.56 \quad 0.45 \cdot 0.475\} = 0.56 \\
 q_2(7) &= \max_{0 \leq x_2 \leq 3} \{r_2(x_2) \cdot q_1(7 - c_2(x_2))\} \\
 &= \max \{r_2(1)q_1(5) \quad r_2(2)q_1(3) \quad r_2(3)q_1(2)\} \\
 &= \{0.45 \quad 0.63 \cdot 0.64\} = 0.64 \\
 q_2(6) &= \max \{r_2(1)q_1(4) \quad r_2(2)q_1(2) \quad r_2(3)q_1(1)\} \\
 &= \{0.45 \quad 0.56 \quad 0.56\} = 0.56 \\
 q_2(5) &= \max \{r_2(1)q_1(3) \quad r_2(2)q_1(1) \quad r_2(3)q_1(0)\} \\
 &= \{0.45 \quad 0.49 \quad 0\} = 0.49 \\
 q_2(2) &= \max \{r_2(1)q_1(2) \quad r_2(2)q_1(0)\} \\
 &= \{0.4 \quad 0\} = 0.4 \\
 q_2(3) &= \max \{r_2(1)q_1(1)\} = 0.35
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 q_4(10) &= \max \{0.432 \quad 0.441 \quad 0.504\} \\
 &\quad 0.504 \quad 9-8 \quad c
 \end{aligned}$$

表 9-8 (c)

	1	2	1	3

$$\begin{aligned}
 9.6 \quad & \quad \quad \quad 12t \quad \quad \quad 10m^3 \\
 & 9-9
 \end{aligned}$$

表 9-9

	t	m ³	
1	3	1	2
2	4	5	3

$$\text{解:} \quad \quad \quad i \quad \quad \quad x_i \quad i=1 \quad 2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \max \quad & Z=2x_1+3x_2 \\
 \text{s.t.} \quad & 3x_1+4x_2 \leq 12 \\
 & x_1+5x_2 \leq 10 \\
 & x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1 \quad 2
 \end{aligned}$$

$$f_k(y, v) = \max_{x_k} \{c_k x_k + f_{k+1}(y - a_k x_k, v - b_k x_k)\}$$

$$f_k(y, v) = \max_{\substack{\sum_{i=1}^k a_i x_i \leq y \\ \sum_{i=1}^k b_i x_i \leq v \\ x_i \geq 0}} \sum_{i=1}^k c_i x_i \quad i=1, 2$$

$$\therefore f_2(y, v) = \max_{0 \leq x_2 \leq \min\left\{\left\lfloor \frac{y}{a_2} \right\rfloor, \left\lfloor \frac{v}{b_2} \right\rfloor\right\}=2} \{3x_2 + f_1(y - 4x_2, v - 5x_2)\}$$

$$\therefore f_2(12, 10) = \max_{0 \leq x_2 \leq \min\left\{\left\lfloor \frac{12}{4} \right\rfloor, \left\lfloor \frac{10}{5} \right\rfloor\right\}=2} \{3x_2 + f_1(12 - 4x_2, 10 - 5x_2)\}$$

$$= \max\{f_1(12, 10) - 3, f_1(8, 5) - 6, f_1(4, 0)\}$$

$$f_1(12, 10) = \max_{0 \leq x_1 \leq \min\left\{\left\lfloor \frac{12}{3} \right\rfloor, \left\lfloor \frac{10}{1} \right\rfloor\right\}=4} c_1 x_1$$

$$= \max\{0, 2, 4, 6, 8\} = 8$$

$$f_1(8, 5) = \max_{0 \leq x_1 \leq \min\left\{\left\lfloor \frac{8}{3} \right\rfloor, \left\lfloor \frac{5}{1} \right\rfloor\right\}=2} c_1 x_1$$

$$= \max\{0, 2, 4\} = 4$$

$$f_1(4, 0) = 0$$

$$\therefore f_2(12, 10) = \max\{8 - 3, 4 - 6, 0\} = 8$$

$$8 \quad x_1=4 \quad x_2=0 \quad 1 \quad 4$$

$$2 \quad 8$$

$$9.7 \quad x_1 x_2 \wedge x_n$$

$$\begin{cases} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = 1 \\ x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, n \end{cases}$$

解:

$$1 \quad n \quad n$$

$$f_k(y) = \max_{x_k} \{c_k x_k + f_{k+1}(y - a_k x_k, v - b_k x_k)\}$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} f_1(y) = y \\ f_k(y) = \max_{0 \leq x_k \leq y} \{c_k x_k + f_{k+1}(y - x_k)\}, k=1, 2, \dots, n \end{cases}$$

$$x_k = \frac{y}{k} \quad f_k(y) = \frac{y}{k}$$

$$f_1(y) = y$$

$$f_2(y) = \max_{0 \leq x_2 \leq y} \{x_2 f_1(y - x_2)\} = \max \{x_2(y - x_2)\}$$

$$x_2 = \frac{y}{2} \quad \{x_2(y - x_2)\} \quad \frac{y}{2}^2 = f_2(y)$$

$$k=1, 2, \dots, x_k = \frac{y}{k} \quad f_k(y) = \left(\frac{y}{k}\right)^k$$

$$x_{n-1} = \frac{y}{n-1} \quad f_{n-1}(y) = \left(\frac{y}{n-1}\right)^{n-1}$$

$$f_n(y) = \max_{0 \leq x_n \leq y} \{x_n f_{n-1}(y - x_n)\} = \max \left\{x_n \left(\frac{y - x_n}{n-1}\right)^{n-1}\right\}$$

$$Z = x_n \left(\frac{y - x_n}{n-1}\right)^{n-1}$$

$$Z' = 0 \quad x_n = \frac{y}{n}$$

$$f_n(y) = \frac{y}{n} \left(\frac{y - \frac{y}{n}}{n-1}\right)^{n-1} = \left(\frac{y}{n}\right)^n$$

$$x_k = \frac{y}{k} \quad f(y) = \left(\frac{y}{k}\right)^k$$

$$y=1$$

$$f_n(1) = \left(\frac{1}{n}\right)^n \quad x_i = \frac{1}{n}$$

$$9.8 \quad x_1^2 + x_2^2 + \dots + x_n^2$$

$$\begin{cases} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = 1 \\ x_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, n \end{cases}$$

解: $f_k(y) = \frac{y}{k} \left(\frac{y - \frac{y}{k}}{k-1}\right)^{k-1}$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} f_1(y) = y^2 \\ f_k(y) = \min_{0 \leq x_k \leq y} \{x_k^2 + f_{k-1}(y - x_k)\}, k=1, 2, \dots, n \end{cases}$$

$$k=1 \quad f_1(y) = y^2$$

$$k=2$$

$$f_2(y) = \min\{x_2^2 + f_1(y - x_2)\} = \min\{x_2^2 + (y - x_2)^2\}$$

$$x_2 = \frac{y}{2} \quad x_2^2 + (y - x_2)^2 = 2 \cdot \frac{y^2}{4} = \frac{y^2}{2}$$

$$k=1, 2 \quad x_k = \frac{y}{k} \quad f_k(y) = \frac{y^2}{k}$$

$$k=n-1 \quad x_{n-1} = \frac{y}{n-1} \quad f_{n-1}(y) = \frac{y^2}{n-1} \times \left(\frac{y}{n-1}\right)^2 = \frac{y^2}{n-1}$$

$$f_n(y) = \min_{0 \leq x_n \leq y} \{x_n^2 + f_{n-1}(y - x_n)\}$$

$$= \min\{x_n^2 + \frac{(y - x_n)^2}{n-1}\}$$

$$Z = x_n^2 + \frac{(y - x_n)^2}{n-1}$$

$$Z' = 2x_n + \frac{1}{n-1}(-2y + 2x_n)$$

$$Z' = 0 \quad x_n = \frac{y}{n} \quad Z = \frac{y^2}{n} \quad f_n(y) = \frac{y^2}{n}$$

$$k=n \quad x_k = \frac{y}{k} \quad f_k(y) = \frac{y^2}{k}$$

$$y=1$$

$$f_n(1) = \frac{1}{n} \quad x_i = \frac{1}{n} \quad i=1, 2, \dots, n$$

$$9.9 \quad x_1 y_1 + x_2 y_2 + \dots + x_n y_n$$

$$\begin{cases} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = a \\ \sum_{i=1}^n y_i = b \\ x_i \geq 0, y_i \geq 0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, n \end{cases}$$

$$\text{解:} \quad f_k(a, b) = \max_{0 \leq x_k \leq a, 0 \leq y_k \leq b} \{x_k y_k + f_{k-1}(a - x_k, b - y_k)\} \quad k=1, 2, \dots, n$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} f_1(a, b) = ab \\ f_k(a, b) = \max_{0 \leq x_k \leq a, 0 \leq y_k \leq b} \{x_k y_k + f_{k-1}(a - x_k, b - y_k)\} \end{cases} \quad k=1, 2, \dots, n$$

$$k=1$$

$$f_1(a, b) = ab$$

$$k=2$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_2(a, b) &= \max\{x_2 y_2 + f_1(a - x_2, b - y_2)\} \\ &= \max\{x_2 y_2 + f_1(a - x_2, b - y_2)\} \end{aligned}$$

$$x_2 = a, y_2 = b$$

$$f_2(a, b) = ab$$

$$\therefore \quad k=n-1 \quad x_{n-1}=a \quad y_{n-1}=b \quad x_i=0 \quad y_i=0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, n-2 \quad f_{n-1}(a, b) = ab$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \quad f_n(a, b) &= \max\{x_n y_n + f_{n-1}(a - x_n, b - y_n)\} \\ &= \max\{x_n y_n + f_{n-1}(a - x_n, b - y_n)\} \end{aligned}$$

$$x_n = a, y_n = b \quad f_n(a, b) = ab$$

\therefore

$$x_n = a, y_n = b \quad f_n(a, b) = ab$$

9.10

$$\left(\frac{x_1^\alpha + x_2^\alpha + \dots + x_n^\alpha}{n} \right)^{1/\alpha} \leq (x_1 x_2 \dots x_n)^{1/n} \leq \left(\frac{x_1^\beta + x_2^\beta + \dots + x_n^\beta}{n} \right)^{1/\beta}$$

$$x_i > 0 (i=1, 2, \dots, n), \alpha < 0 < \beta$$

证:

$$Q \beta > 0$$

$$\therefore \quad (x_1^\beta x_2^\beta \dots x_n^\beta)^{1/n} \leq \frac{x_1^\beta + x_2^\beta + \dots + x_n^\beta}{n}$$

$$a > 0, b > 0$$

$$\max \quad z = \left(\prod_{i=1}^n x_i^\beta \right)^{1/n}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^\beta = a$$

$$f_k(x) = \max_{\sum_{i=1}^k x_i^\beta = x} \left\{ \left(\prod_{i=1}^k x_i^\beta \right)^{1/k} \right\}$$

$$\beta > 0 \quad x \geq 0$$

$$f_n(a) = \frac{a}{n}$$

$$x > 0$$

$$f_1(x) = \max_{x_1^\beta = x} x_1^\beta = x$$

$$n = k - 1$$

$$x > 0$$

$$f_{k-1}(x) = \frac{x}{k-1}$$

$$x \geq 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_k(x) &= \max_{\sum_{i=1}^k x_i^\beta = x} \left\{ \left(\prod_{i=1}^k x_i^\beta \right)^{1/k} \right\} \\ &= \max_{\sum_{i=1}^k x_i^\beta = x} \left\{ \left(\prod_{i=1}^{k-1} x_i^\beta \cdot x_k^\beta \right)^{1/k} \right\} \\ &= \max_{\sum_{i=1}^{k-1} x_i^\beta = x - x_k^\beta} \left\{ \left[\left(\prod_{i=1}^{k-1} x_i^\beta \right)^{\frac{1}{k-1}} \cdot (x_k^\beta)^{\frac{1}{k-1}} \right]^{\frac{k-1}{k}} \right\} \\ &= \max_{x_k^\beta \leq x} \left\{ \left[f_{k-1}(x - x_k^\beta) \cdot (x_k^\beta)^{\frac{1}{k-1}} \right]^{\frac{k-1}{k}} \right\} \end{aligned}$$

$$f_{k-1}(x - x_k^\beta) = \frac{x - x_k^\beta}{k-1}$$

$$f_k(x) = \max_{x_k^\beta \leq x} \left\{ \left[\frac{x - x_k^\beta}{k-1} \cdot (x_k^\beta)^{\frac{1}{k-1}} \right]^{\frac{k-1}{k}} \right\}$$

$$x_k^\beta = \frac{x}{k}$$

$$f_k(x) = \max_{x_k^\beta \leq x} \left\{ \left[\frac{x - x_k^\beta}{k-1} \cdot (x_k^\beta)^{\frac{1}{k-1}} \right]^{\frac{k-1}{k}} \right\}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left[\frac{x - \frac{x}{k}}{k-1} \cdot \left(\frac{x}{k} \right)^{\frac{1}{k-1}} \right]^{\frac{k-1}{k}} \\ &= \frac{x}{k} \end{aligned}$$

第十章 区组设计

一、内容提要

" "

(一) 基本概念

定义 10.1 $S = \{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n\}$ n $A = (a_{ij})_{n \times n}$ A
 S A S A n

定义 10.2 $A = (a_{ij})$ $B = (b_{ij})$ n
 a_{ij} b_{ij} n^2 a_{ij} b_{ij} $i, j = 1, 2, \dots, n$
 n A B
 定义 10.3 $X = \{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_b\}$ X X_i X_2 \dots X_b b $\{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_b\}$
 X X_i $i = 1, 2, \dots, b$ X
 X

定义 10.4 π " " "

1 π
 2 π
 3 π 4 3
 4 π 4 3

定义 10.5 π

定理 10.1 $n \geq 2$ π l $n+1$

1 l $n+1$
 2 π $n+1$

定理 10.2 $n \geq 2$ π

1 $n+1$

2 $n+1$

3 $n+1$

4 $n+1$

5 π n^2+n+1

6 π n^2+n+1

定义 10.6 π n π l $n+1$

定义 10.7 π

π

定义 10.8 π π' π n

n π'

定理 10.3 π' n

性质 1 π' n^2

性质 2 π' n^2+n

性质 3 π' n

性质 4 π' $n+1$

性质 5 π'

定理 10.4 π' π' 10.3

π' n

定理 10.5 $n=P^m$ P m n

定理 10.6 $n \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ n $P \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$

n

定义 10.9 $X = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_v\}$ X X

定义 10.10 $A = (a_{ij})_{m \times s}$ A $1, 2, \dots, n$

$s \leq n$ $1, 2, \dots, n$ $m \leq n$ A $m \times s$ $m \leq n$

定义 10.11 $A = (a_{ij})_{m \times n}$ A $1, 2, \dots, n$

A $n \times s$ B $1, 2, \dots, n$ B

定理 10.7 $A = (a_{ij})_{1, 2, \dots, n}$ $m \times s$ N i i

n

$$N \quad i \geq m+s-n \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad n$$

$$\text{定义 10.12} \quad A_1 \quad A_2 \quad \text{L} \quad A_k \quad n \quad n \geq k \geq 2 \quad A_i \quad A_j \quad i \neq j$$

$$i \quad j=1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad k \quad A_1 \quad A_2 \quad \text{L} \quad A_k$$

$$\text{引理} \quad A = a_{ij} \quad B = b_{ij} \quad A = a_{ij}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & \text{L} & n \\ i_1 & i_2 & i_3 & \text{L} & i_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$A' = a_{ij}' \quad A' \quad B$$

$$\text{定理 10.8} \quad A_1 \quad A_2 \quad \text{L} \quad A_k \quad n \quad k \leq n-1$$

$$\text{定理 10.9} \quad n = P^m \quad P \quad m \quad n \geq 3 \quad n-1$$

n

$$\text{定理 10.10} \quad A_1 \quad A_2 \quad \text{L} \quad A_k \quad n_1 \quad B_1 \quad B_2 \quad \text{L} \quad B_k$$

$$n_2 \quad n_1 \times n_2 \quad C_r$$

$$C_r = \begin{bmatrix} (a_{11}^{(r)}, B_r) & (a_{12}^{(r)}, B_r) & \text{L} & (a_{1n_1}^{(r)}, B_r) \\ (a_{21}^{(r)}, B_r) & (a_{22}^{(r)}, B_r) & \text{L} & (a_{2n_1}^{(r)}, B_r) \\ \text{L} & \text{L} & \text{L} & \text{L} \\ (a_{n_11}^{(r)}, B_r) & (a_{n_12}^{(r)}, B_r) & \text{L} & (a_{n_1n_1}^{(r)}, B_r) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$(a_{ij}^{(r)}, B_r) \quad n_2 \quad k \quad l \quad (a_{ij}^{(r)}, b_{kl}^{(r)}) \quad k \quad l=1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad n_2$$

$$C_1 \quad C_2 \quad \text{L} \quad C_k \quad n_1 \times n_2$$

$$\text{定理 10.11} \quad n = P_1^{a_1} P_2^{a_2} \text{L} P_k^{a_k} \quad n \quad a_i \quad P_i \quad i=1 \quad 2$$

$$\text{L} \quad k \quad t = \min \quad P_i^{a_i} - 1 \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad k \quad t \geq 2 \quad t \quad n$$

$$\text{定理 10.12} \quad n-1 \quad n \quad n$$

$$\text{定义 10.13} \quad X = x_1 \quad x_2 \quad \text{L} \quad x_v \quad X_1 \quad X_2 \quad \text{L} \quad X_b \quad X$$

$$1 \quad |X_i| = k \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad \text{L} \quad b$$

$$2 \quad x_i \quad X \quad x_i \quad b \quad r$$

$$3 \quad X \quad x_i \quad x_j \quad b \quad \lambda$$

$$4 \quad k < v$$

$$\{X_1 \quad X_2 \quad \text{L} \quad X_b\} \quad X \quad v \quad r \quad k \quad \lambda -$$

$$b \quad v \quad r \quad k \quad \lambda \quad 5 \quad \text{BIBD}$$

Balanced Incomplete Block Design

$$\text{定理 10.13} \quad (b \quad v \quad r \quad k \quad \lambda -$$

$$bk=vr$$

$$r \quad k-1 \quad =\lambda \quad v-1$$

定义 10.14 $X_1 \quad X_2 \quad \text{L} \quad X_b \quad X \quad b \quad v \quad r \quad k \quad \lambda -$

$$a_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1 & x_i \in X_j \\ 0 & x_i \notin X_j \end{cases} \quad i=1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad v \quad j=1 \quad 2 \quad \text{L} \quad b$$

$$A = \begin{matrix} & b & v & r & k & \lambda - \\ a_{ij} & & & & & \end{matrix}$$

定理 10.14 $A = \begin{matrix} & b & v & r & k & \lambda - \\ a_{ij} & & & & & \end{matrix}$

$$AA^T = \begin{matrix} r-\lambda & I+\lambda J \end{matrix} \quad 10.9$$

$$10.9 \quad J \quad v \quad 1 \quad I \quad v$$

定理 10.15 $A \quad b \quad v \quad r \quad k \quad \lambda - \quad B=AA^T$

$$\det B = \begin{matrix} r-\lambda & v-1 & v\lambda -\lambda+r \end{matrix}$$

$$b \geq v \quad r \geq k$$

定理 10.16 $\pi' \quad n \quad b \quad v \quad r \quad k \quad \lambda -$

$$b=n^2+n \quad v=n^2 \quad r=n+1 \quad k=n \quad \lambda=1 \quad n \geq 2$$

定义 10.15 $b \quad v \quad r \quad k \quad \lambda - \quad v \geq 3 \quad k=3 \quad b \quad v \quad r \quad 3 \quad \lambda -$
 $\lambda=1 \quad b \quad v \quad r \quad 3 \quad 1 - \quad v \quad \text{Steiner}$

定理 10.17 $v \quad \text{Steiner}$

$$v \geq 3 \quad v=1 \quad 3 \quad \text{mod} 6$$

定理 10.18 $v \quad \text{Steiner} \quad \varphi_1 \quad u \quad \text{Steiner} \quad \varphi_2$

$$vu \quad \text{Steiner} \quad \varphi$$

定义 10.16 $X = \begin{matrix} 1 & 2 & \text{L} & v & v=6n+3 & \varphi & X & \text{Steiner} \end{matrix}$

$$b \quad b=v(v-1)/6=(2n+1)(3n+1) \quad 3n+1 \quad 2n+1$$

$$X \quad 3n+1$$

Kirkman .

定义 10.17 $(b, v, r, k, \lambda) - \quad b = v \quad r = k$

$(b \quad v \quad r \quad k \quad \lambda) - \quad (v, k, \lambda) -$

定理 10.19 $A \quad (v, k, \lambda) -$

$$AA^T = (k - \lambda)I + \lambda J$$

$$A^T A = (k - \lambda)I + \lambda J$$

$$AJ = JA = kJ$$

定理 10.20 $A \quad v \quad k \quad \lambda - \quad v \quad k \quad \lambda -$

$$\lambda$$

$$|X_i \cap X_j| = \lambda \quad i \neq j$$

定理 10.21 A $(v, k, \lambda) -$
 $\lambda(v-1) = k(k-1)$

定理 10.22 A $(v, k, \lambda) -$ v $k - \lambda$

定理 10.23 n $n^2 + n + 1$ $n + 1$ $1 -$ $n \geq 2$

定理 10.24 $\mathcal{X} = \{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_v\}$ $X = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_v\}$ $v, k, \lambda -$

i

$$\mathcal{X}' = \{X_1 \cap X_i, X_2 \cap X_i, \dots, X_{i-1} \cap X_i, X_{i+1} \cap X_i, \dots, X_v \cap X_i\}$$

$$\mathcal{X}' \quad X_i \quad v-1 \quad k \quad k-1 \quad \lambda \quad \lambda-1 \quad -$$

定义 10.18 \mathcal{X}' \mathcal{X}

定理 10.25 $X'' = \{X_1 \setminus X_i, X_2 \setminus X_i, \dots, X_{i-1} \setminus X_i, X_{i+1} \setminus X_i, \dots, X_v \setminus X_i\}$ \mathcal{X}''

$$X \setminus X_i \quad v-1 \quad v-k \quad k \quad k-\lambda \quad \lambda -$$

定义 10.19 \mathcal{X}'' \mathcal{X}

定义 10.20 H $+1 \quad -1 \quad n$
 $HH^T = nI$

$I \quad n$ H Hadamard $H -$

定义 10.21 H $H -$ H $+1$ H

定理 10.26 $n > 2$ n Hadamard
 $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$

定理 10.27 $n \geq 8$ n $H -$ $v \quad k \quad \lambda -$
 $v = n-1 \quad k = n/2-1 \quad \lambda = n/4-1$

定义 10.22 $A = (a_{ij})$ $B = (b_{ij})$ $m \quad n$ $m \times n$

$$A \times B = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}B & a_{12}B & \dots & a_{1m}B \\ a_{21}B & a_{22}B & \dots & a_{2m}B \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1}B & a_{m2}B & \dots & a_{mm}B \end{bmatrix}$$

$A \quad B$ Kronecker

定理 10.28 $m \quad n \quad H -$ $m \times n$

$H -$

(二) 基本方法

$1 \quad 1 \times n \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad L \quad n$
 $2 \quad n \quad n-1 \quad 2 \times n \quad n$
 $1 \quad 2 \quad L \quad n-1 \quad 2 \times n$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & L & n \\ n & 1 & 2 & L & n-1 \end{pmatrix}$$

 $3 \quad 2 \times n \quad n-1 \quad n-1$
 $3 \times n \quad n-1 \quad n \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad L \quad n-2 \quad 3 \times n$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & L & n \\ n & 1 & 2 & L & n-1 \\ n-1 & n & 1 & L & n-2 \end{pmatrix}$$

 $4 \quad n \times n$
 注意: $1 \quad 1, 2, L, n \quad 1 \times n$
 $2 \quad m \times s \quad n \quad m \leq n \quad s \leq n$
 $m \quad m \quad m$
 $N(i) = m + s - n \quad i$
 $1 \quad 2 \quad L \quad n$
 $m \times s+1 \quad s+1 < n$
 $n \times n$
 n
 $2 \quad n = p^m \quad n-1 \quad n$
 $1 \quad 10.9$
 2
 $n \quad p^m \quad n = p^m \quad p \quad m$
 $n-1 \quad n \quad A_k (k=1, 2, L, n-1)$
 $A_k = (a_{ij}^{(k)}), i, j = 1, 2, L, n; k = 1, 2, L, n-1$
 $a_{ij}^{(k)} = a_k \cdot a_i + a_j$
 $" + " \quad " \cdot " \quad GF(P^m) \quad " \quad " \quad " \quad " \quad a_1 = 1$
 $a_n = 0$
 $n-1 \quad n \quad A_k (k=1, 2, L, n-1) \quad n-1 \quad n$
 注意: $n = p^m \quad p \quad m \quad n-1 \quad n$
 $3 \quad n$

1	10.10	10.11
2		
	$n \not\equiv 2 \pmod{4}$	
	$n = p_1^{\alpha_1} \cdot p_2^{\alpha_2} \text{ L } p_k^{\alpha_k} = n_1 \cdot n_2 \text{ L } n_k$	
	2	$n_1 - 1 \quad n_2 - 1 \quad \text{L} \quad n_k - 1 \quad n_1 \quad n_2$
L	n_k	
	10.10	$t \quad n$
$t = \min\{n_i - 1\} \geq 2 \quad i = 1, 2, \text{L}, k$		
注意:	$n = p^m \equiv 2 \pmod{4} \quad m > 6$	
n		
4	$H -$	$H - \quad H -$
1	10.28	
2		
	$H_m \quad H_n$	$m \quad n \quad H -$
	10.22	$H_m \quad H_n \quad H_m \times H_n$
	$H_m \times H_n$	$m \times n \quad H -$
注意:		$H -$
5	$\nu \quad k \quad \lambda$	
1	10.27	
2		
	4	$n \quad n > 8 \quad H -$
	$H -$	
	$H -$	$1 \quad -1 \quad 0$
	$\nu \quad k \quad \lambda \quad -$	$\nu = n - 1 \quad k = n/2 - 1 \quad \lambda = n/4 - 1$
6	(b, ν, r, k, λ)	
1	10.24	10.25
2		
	5	$\nu \quad k \quad \lambda \quad -$
	$(\nu, k, \lambda) -$	A
	10.24	10.25
	$(\nu, k, \lambda) -$	
	$\nu - 1 \quad k \quad k - 1 \quad \lambda \quad \lambda - 1 \quad -$	$\nu - 1 \quad \nu - k \quad k \quad k - \lambda \quad \lambda \quad -$
	A	$i \quad i \quad 0 \quad 1$

$$(\nu-1 \ k \ k-1 \ \lambda \ \lambda-1)-$$

$$\nu-1 \ \nu-k \ k \ k-\lambda \ \lambda \ -$$

注意:

$$4 \ 5 \ 6$$

$$n>2 \quad n=0 \pmod{4} \quad H-$$

$$k \ \lambda \ -$$

$$k \ \lambda$$

$$b \quad r \ k \ \lambda$$

二、习题解答

$$10.1 \quad \pi' \quad n$$

$$1 \ \pi' \quad n^2$$

$$2 \ \pi' \quad n^2+n$$

$$3 \ \pi' \quad n$$

$$4 \ \pi' \quad n+1$$

$$5 \ \pi'$$

$$\text{证:} \quad 10.7 \quad 10.8 \quad \pi' \quad \pi \quad n$$

$$\pi' \quad 10.2 \quad 5 \quad \pi \quad n^2+n+1 \quad n+1$$

$$\pi' \quad n^2 \quad 1 \quad 10.2 \quad 6 \quad \pi \quad n^2+n+1$$

$$\pi' \quad n^2+n \quad 2 \quad 10.2 \quad 3 \quad \pi$$

$$n+1 \quad \pi$$

$$\pi' \quad n \quad 3$$

$$4$$

$$4$$

$$\pi'$$

$$n$$

$$3$$

$$\pi'$$

$$n$$

$$\pi'$$

$$n^2-n+1$$

$$1$$

$$4$$

$$\pi' \ \pi$$

$$10.4$$

$$5$$

$$10.2 \quad 7$$

$$\text{解:} \quad 10.9 \quad 7$$

$$A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 & 7 \\ 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 & 7 & 6 \\ 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 & 7 & 6 & 5 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 & 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 & 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 \\ 1 & 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$10.3 \quad 6 \quad 7$$

解: $GF_7 = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$

10.9

$$A_k = (a_{ij}^{(k)})_{i,j=1}^6, a_{ij}^{(k)} = a_k * a_i + a_j$$

$$k=1, 2, \dots, 6, i, j=1, 2, \dots, 7$$

$$a_1=1$$

$$a_7=7=0$$

$$6$$

$$7$$

$$A_1 = (a_{ij}^{(1)}) = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_2 = (a_{ij}^{(2)}) = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_3 = (a_{ij}^{(3)}) = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 \\ 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_4 = (a_{ij}^{(4)}) = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 \\ 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 \\ 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_5 = (a_{ij}^{(5)}) = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 \\ 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_6 = (a_{ij}^{(6)}) = \begin{bmatrix} 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

10.4

11

解: $GF_{11} = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11\}$

10

11

11

10.9

$$A_k = (a_{ij}^{(k)})_{i,j=1}^{11}, a_{ij}^{(k)} = a_k * a_i + a_j, k=1, 2, \dots, 11$$

$$a_1=1$$

$$a_{11}=11=0$$

$$11$$

$$A_1 = (a_{ij}^{(1)}) = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 \\ 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_2 = (a_{ij}^{(2)}) = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 \\ 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 10 & 11 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 \end{bmatrix}$$

10.5

12

解

10.10

12

$$A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 12 & 11 & 10 & 9 & 8 & 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 11 & 12 & 9 & 10 & 7 & 8 & 5 & 6 & 3 & 4 & 1 & 2 \\ 10 & 9 & 12 & 11 & 6 & 5 & 8 & 7 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 3 \\ 9 & 10 & 11 & 12 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 8 & 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 & 12 & 11 & 10 & 9 \\ 7 & 8 & 5 & 6 & 3 & 4 & 1 & 2 & 11 & 12 & 9 & 10 \\ 6 & 5 & 8 & 7 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 3 & 10 & 9 & 12 & 11 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 12 \\ 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 & 12 & 11 & 10 & 9 & 8 & 7 & 6 & 5 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 2 & 11 & 12 & 9 & 10 & 7 & 8 & 5 & 6 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 & 3 & 10 & 9 & 12 & 11 & 6 & 5 & 8 & 7 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 12 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 12 & 10 & 9 & 11 & 4 & 2 & 1 & 3 & 8 & 6 & 5 & 7 \\ 11 & 9 & 10 & 12 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 4 & 7 & 5 & 6 & 8 \\ 10 & 12 & 11 & 9 & 2 & 4 & 3 & 1 & 6 & 8 & 7 & 5 \\ 9 & 11 & 12 & 10 & 1 & 3 & 4 & 2 & 5 & 7 & 8 & 6 \\ 8 & 6 & 5 & 7 & 12 & 10 & 9 & 11 & 4 & 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 7 & 5 & 6 & 8 & 11 & 9 & 10 & 12 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 4 \\ 6 & 8 & 8 & 5 & 10 & 12 & 11 & 9 & 2 & 4 & 3 & 1 \\ 5 & 7 & 8 & 6 & 9 & 11 & 12 & 10 & 1 & 3 & 4 & 2 \\ 4 & 2 & 1 & 3 & 8 & 6 & 5 & 7 & 12 & 10 & 9 & 11 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & 4 & 7 & 5 & 6 & 8 & 11 & 9 & 10 & 12 \\ 2 & 4 & 3 & 1 & 6 & 8 & 7 & 5 & 10 & 12 & 11 & 9 \\ 1 & 3 & 4 & 2 & 5 & 7 & 8 & 6 & 9 & 11 & 12 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

10.6

15

3

5

$$A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$B_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 5 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 5 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$B_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 4 & 5 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

10.10

15

[illegible]

10.7

21

3

7

$$A_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$B_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 6 & 7 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$$

21

[illegible]

$$C_2 =$$

6

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 4 & 6 & 5 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 5 & 2 & 6 \\ 5 & 6 & 3 & 2 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

10.7

1	3	4	6	5	2
3	4	1	5	2	6
5	6	3	2	4	1
2	1	5	3	6	4
4	2	6	1	3	5
6	5	2	4	1	3

6

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

10.7

6

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & 5 & 6 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 6 & 1 & 5 \\ 6 & 4 & 5 & 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 5 & 6 & 1 & 3 & 4 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

10.10

3*7

7

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 7 & 6 & 5 & 2 \\ 2 & 5 & 7 & 1 & 3 & 4 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

解:

10.7

7

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 7 & 6 & 5 & 2 \\ 2 & 5 & 7 & 1 & 3 & 4 & 6 \\ 4 & 6 & 2 & 3 & 7 & 1 & 5 \\ 7 & 1 & 5 & 6 & 4 & 2 & 3 \\ 6 & 7 & 4 & 5 & 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 5 & 3 & 6 & 2 & 1 & 7 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

10.11

$(b, v, r, k, \lambda) -$

$$1 \quad b=8, v=6, r=5, k=3, \lambda=2$$

证明:

10.13 $(b, v, r, k, \lambda) -$

$$bk = vr$$

$$bk = 24$$

$$vr = 30$$

$$bk \neq vr$$

$(b, v, r, k, \lambda) -$

$$2 \quad b=22, v=22, r=22, k=22, \lambda=22$$

证明:

$$\ominus b=v, k=r \quad (b, v, r, k, \lambda) -$$

$$v=22$$

$$k=\lambda=5$$

10.22

$$10.12 \quad (b, v, r, k, \lambda) -$$

$$v=21, b=28 \text{ 和 } r=8$$

$$k, \lambda$$

$$v=15, b=5 \quad r=2$$

$$b \quad r$$

解:

$$10.13 \quad (b, v, r, k, \lambda) -$$

$$bk = vr \quad r(k-1) = \lambda(v-1)$$

$$v=21, b=28, r=8$$

$$bk = vr \Rightarrow k = \frac{vr}{b} = 6$$

$$r(k-1) = \lambda(v-1) \Rightarrow r = \frac{\lambda(k-1)}{v-1} = 2$$

$$v=15, k=5, \lambda=2,$$

$$r(k-1) = \lambda(v-1) \Rightarrow r = \frac{\lambda(v-1)}{k-1} = 7$$

$$bk = vr \Rightarrow b = \frac{vr}{k} = 21$$

$$10.13 \quad (7, 3, 1) - \quad 7 \quad 4 \quad \{x_1, x_2, x_4\} \quad \{x_2, x_3, x_5\} \\ \{x_3, x_4, x_6\} \quad \{x_4, x_5, x_7\}$$

$$\text{解: } b=7, v=7, r=3, k=3, \lambda=1$$

$$\Theta 7=2^2+2+1 \quad 3=2+1 \quad 10.23 \quad n \quad (n^2+n+1, n, 1) -$$

$$x_1, L, x_7$$

$$\therefore \quad 2 \quad (2^2+2+1, 3, 1) -$$

$$10.4 \quad 2 \quad 10.4 \quad 1$$

$$2$$

$$\begin{matrix} x_2 & x_6 & x_7 \\ \{x_1, x_5, x_6\} & \{x_1, x_3, x_7\} & \{x_2, x_6, x_7\} \end{matrix}$$

$$10.14 \quad (v, k, \lambda) -$$

	$v=b$	$k=r$	λ
a	46	10	2
b	34	12	4
c	67	12	2
d	54	11	2
e	53	13	3
f	92	14	2
g	41	39	4
h	211	15	1
k	106	15	2

解:

$$a \quad (v, k, \lambda) - \quad 10.22 \quad \Theta \quad v \quad k - \lambda = 8$$

b $(v, k, \lambda) -$ 10.22 Θ v $k - \lambda = 8$

c

d 10.21 Θ $r(k-1) \neq \lambda(v-1)$

e

f

g 10.21 Θ $r(k-1) \neq \lambda(v-1)$

h $b = 14^2 + 14 + 1, k = 14 + 1, \lambda = 1$ $n = 14$

10.6 14

k 10.22 Θ v $k - \lambda = 13$

10.15 $(b, v, r, k, \lambda) -$ A A 0 1 1 0

A' A

a A'

b

c

证明: A $(b, v, r, k, \lambda) -$ A $v \times b$

A k 1 $v - k$ 0

A r 1 $b - r$ 0

A 1 λ λ

A' $v \times b$

A' $v - k$ 1 k 0

A' $b - r$ 1 r 0

A' 1 $b - 2r + \lambda$

$b - 2r + \lambda$ A'

$(b, v, b - r, v - k, b - 2r + \lambda)$

$(b, v, r, k, \lambda) -$ $b = v, r = k$ $(b \ v$

$b - r \ v - k \ b - 2r + \lambda) -$ $b - r = v - k$ $(b \ v \ b - r \ v - k$

$b - 2r + \lambda) -$

10.16 21 Steiner

3 Steiner φ_1 7 Steiner φ_2

10.18 21 Steiner

$X = \{x_1, x_2, x_3\}$ $Y = \{y_1, y_2, y_3, y_4, y_5, y_6, y_7\}$

10.17 27 Steiner

解: 3 Steiner φ_1 9 Steiner φ_2

10.18 27 Steiner

10.18

$$H_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad H_4 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$(v, k, \lambda) -$ 2 4 $H-$ 8 $H-$
4 BIBD

解: 10.22 10.28 8 $H-$ H_8

$$H_8 = H_2 \times H_4 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 & -1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 & -1 & -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 & -1 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

-1 0

$(7, 3, 1) -$

$$\begin{matrix} & X_1 & X_2 & X_3 & X_4 & X_5 & X_6 & X_7 \\ \begin{matrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \\ x_6 \\ x_7 \end{matrix} & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{matrix}$$

$(7, 3, 1) -$

$$\begin{matrix} X_1 = \{x_1, x_4, x_5\} & X_2 = \{x_2, x_4, x_6\} & X_3 = \{x_3, x_4, x_7\} & X_4 = \{x_1, x_2, x_3\} \\ X_5 = \{x_1, x_6, x_7\} & X_6 = \{x_2, x_5, x_7\} & X_7 = \{x_3, x_5, x_6\} \end{matrix}$$

10.24 10.25 XI X_1 XI X_2 XX X_1 XX X_2 4 BIBD

1 $XI X_1$

6 3 2 1 0

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

6 3 2 1 0 -

$$X_2 I X_1 = \{x_4\} \quad X_3 I X_1 = \{x_4\} \quad X_4 I X_1 = \{x_1\}$$

$$X_5 I X_1 = \{x_1\} \quad X_6 I X_1 = \{x_5\} \quad X_7 I X_1 = \{x_5\}$$

 2 $XI X_2$

6 3 2 1 0

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

6 3 2 1 0 -

$$X_1 I X_2 = \{x_4\} \quad X_3 I X_2 = \{x_4\} \quad X_4 I X_2 = \{x_2\}$$

$$X_5 I X_2 = \{x_6\} \quad X_6 I X_2 = \{x_2\} \quad X_7 I X_2 = \{x_6\}$$

 3 XX_1

6 4 3 2 1

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

6 4 3 2 1 -

$$X_2 \setminus X_1 = \{x_2, x_6\} \quad X_3 \setminus X_1 = \{x_3, x_7\} \quad X_4 \setminus X_1 = \{x_2, x_3\}$$

$$X_5 \setminus X_1 = \{x_6, x_7\} \quad X_6 \setminus X_1 = \{x_2, x_7\} \quad X_7 \setminus X_1 = \{x_3, x_6\}$$

 4 XX_2

6 4 3 2 1

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

6 4 3 2 1 -

$$X_1 \setminus X_2 = \{x_1, x_5\} \quad X_3 \setminus X_2 = \{x_3, x_7\} \quad X_4 \setminus X_2 = \{x_1, x_3\}$$

$$X_5 \setminus X_2 = \{x_1, x_7\} \quad X_6 \setminus X_2 = \{x_5, x_7\} \quad X_7 \setminus X_2 = \{x_3, x_5\}$$

参 考 文 献

- 1 2003
- 2 1981
- 3 1987
- 4 C.L.Liu 1987
- 5 3 2002
- 6 1994
- 7 .
- 1989
- 8 Richard A Brualdi Introductory Combinatorics Prentice Hall Inc 1999
- 9 L.Lovász Combinatorial Problems and Exercises North Holland Publishing Company 1979
- 10 A.Kaufmann D.Coster Exercies de Combinatorique avec Solutions DUNOD 1969